

# **DOCTRINAL TEXTS**

**International Standards in Cultural Heritage Protection**

**/2018 edition/**

**Lublin University of Technology**

**ICOMOS Poland**

**Warszawa - Lublin, 2018**

# **DOCTRINAL TEXTS**

**International Standards in Cultural Heritage Protection /2018 edition/**

Selected and edited by: Bogusław Szmygin

Lublin University of Technology

ICOMOS Poland

Warszawa - Lublin, 2018

**Publishers:**

Lublin University of Technology  
ul. Nadbystrzycka 38D, 20-618 Lublin

ICOMOS Poland  
Plac Zamkowy 4, 00-277 Warsaw

**Doctrinal Texts**

**International Standards in Cultural Heritage Protection /2018 edition/**

**Selected and edited by:** Bogusław Szmygin

**Review:**

Professor Krzysztof Pawłowski

**Editing and graphic design:** Iwona Stachyra

**ISBN 978-83-7947-341-0**



Project SURE: Sustainable Urban Rehabilitation in Europe. Erasmus+ Call: 2016; KA2 – Cooperation for Innovation and the Exchange of Good Practices Strategic Partnerships for higher education

This project has been funded with support from the European Commission. This publication reflects the views only of the author, and the Commission cannot be held responsible for any use which may be made of the information contained therein. FREE PUBLICATION

**Printed:**

Drukarnia Alf-Graf, ul. Abramowicka 6, 20-442 Lublin







**ATHENS 1931**

## **THE ATHENS CHARTER FOR THE RESTORATION OF HISTORIC MONUMENTS**

**Adopted at the First International Congress of Architects and Technicians of Historic Monuments, Athens 1931**

At the Congress in Athens the following seven main resolutions were made and called "Carta del Restauro":

1. International organizations for Restoration on operational and advisory levels are to be established.
2. Proposed Restoration projects are to be subjected to knowledgeable criticism to prevent mistakes which will cause loss of character and historical values to the structures.
3. Problems of preservation of historic sites are to be solved by legislation at national level for all countries.
4. Excavated sites which are not subject to immediate restoration should be reburied for protection.
5. Modern techniques and materials may be used in restoration work.
6. Historical sites are to be given strict custodial protection.
7. Attention should be given to the protection of areas surrounding historic sites.

## General Conclusions of the Athens Conference

### I. DOCTRINES. GENERAL PRINCIPLES

The Conference heard the statement of the general principles and doctrines relating to the protection of monuments.

Whatever may be the variety of concrete cases, each of which are open to a different solution, the Conference noted that there predominates in the different countries represented a general tendency to abandon restorations in toto and to avoid the attendant dangers by initiating a system of regular and permanent maintenance calculated to ensure the preservation of the buildings.

When, as the result of decay or destruction, restoration appears to be indispensable, it recommends that the historic and artistic work of the past should be respected, without excluding the style of any given period.

The Conference recommends that the occupation of buildings, which ensures the continuity of their life, should be maintained but that they should be used for a purpose which respects their historic or artistic character.

### II. ADMINISTRATIVE AND LEGISLATIVE MEASURES REGARDING HISTORICAL MONUMENTS

The Conference heard the statement of legislative measures devised to protect monuments of artistic, historic or scientific interest and belonging to the different countries.

It unanimously approved the general tendency which, in this connection, recognises a certain right of the community in regard to private ownership.

It noted that the differences existing between these legislative measures were due to the difficulty of reconciling public law with the rights of individuals.

Consequently, while approving the general tendency of these measures, the Conference is of opinion that they should be in keeping with local circumstances and with the trend of public opinion, so that the least possible opposition may be encountered, due allowance being made for the sacrifices which the owners of property may be called upon to make in the general interest.

It recommends that the public authorities in each country be empowered to take conservatory measures in cases of emergency.

It earnestly hopes that the International Museums Office will publish a repertory and a comparative table of the legislative measures in force in the different countries and that this information will be kept up to date.

### III. AESTHETIC ENHANCEMENT OF ANCIENT MONUMENTS

The Conference recommends that, in the construction of buildings, the character and external aspect of the cities in which they are to be erected should be respected, especially in the neighbourhood of ancient monuments, where the surroundings should be given special consideration. Even certain groupings and certain particularly picturesque perspective treatment should be preserved.

A study should also be made of the ornamental vegetation most suited to certain monuments or groups of monuments from the point of view of preserving their ancient character. It specially recommends the suppression of all forms of publicity, of the erection of unsightly telegraph poles and the exclusion of all noisy factories and even of tall shafts in the neighbourhood of artistic and historic monuments.

### IV. RESTORATION OF MONUMENTS

The experts heard various communications concerning the use of modern materials for the consolidation of ancient monuments. They approved the judicious use of all the resources at the disposal of modern technique and more especially of reinforced concrete.

They specified that this work of consolidation should whenever possible be concealed in order that the aspect and character of the restored monument may be preserved.

They recommended their adoption more particularly in cases where their use makes it possible to avoid the dangers of dismantling and reinstating the portions to be preserved.

## V. THE DETERIORATION OF ANCIENT MONUMENTS

The Conference noted that, in the conditions of present day life, monuments throughout the world were being threatened to an ever-increasing degree by atmospheric agents.

Apart from the customary precautions and the methods successfully applied in the preservation of monumental statuary in current practice, it was impossible, in view of the complexity of cases and with the knowledge at present available, to formulate any general rules.

The Conference recommends:

1. That, in each country, the architects and curators of monuments should collaborate with specialists in the physical, chemical, and natural sciences with a view to determining the methods to be adopted in specific cases;
2. That the International Museums Office should keep itself informed of the work being done in each country in this field and that mention should be made thereof in the publications of the Office.

With regard to the preservation of monumental sculpture, the Conference is of opinion that the removal of works of art from the surroundings for which they were designed is, in principle, to be discouraged. It recommends, by way of precaution, the preservation of original models whenever these still exist or if this proves impossible, the taking of casts.

## VI. THE TECHNIQUE OF CONSERVATION

The Conference is gratified to note that the principles and technical considerations set forth in the different detailed communications are inspired by the same idea, namely:

In the case of ruins, scrupulous conservation is necessary, and steps should be taken to reinstate any original fragments that may be recovered (anastylosis), whenever this is possible; the new materials used for this purpose should in all cases be recognisable. When the preservation of ruins brought to light in the course of excavations is found to be impossible, the Conference recommends that they be buried, accurate records being of course taken before filling-in operations are undertaken.

It should be unnecessary to mention that the technical work undertaken in connection with the excavation and preservation of ancient monuments calls for close collaboration between the archaeologist and the architect. With regard to other monuments, the experts unanimously agreed that, before any consolidation or partial restoration is undertaken, a thorough analysis should be made of the defects and the nature of the decay of these monuments. They recognised that each case needed to be treated individually.

## VII. THE CONSERVATION OF MONUMENTS AND INTERNATIONAL COLLABORATION

### a) *Technical and moral co-operation.*

The Conference, convinced that the question of the conservation of the artistic and archaeological property of mankind is one that interests the community of the States, which are wardens of civilisation,

Hopes that the States, acting in the spirit of the Covenant of the League of Nations, will collaborate with each other on an ever-increasing scale and in a more concrete manner with a view to furthering the preservation of artistic and historic monuments;

Considers it highly desirable that qualified institutions and associations should, without in any manner whatsoever prejudicing international public law, be given an opportunity of manifesting their interest in the protection of works of art in which civilisation has been expressed to the highest degree and which would seem to be threatened with destruction;



Expresses the wish that requests to attain this end, submitted to the Intellectual Co-operation Organisation of the League of Nations, be recommended to the earnest attention of the States.

It will be for the International Committee on Intellectual Co-operation, after an enquiry conducted by the International Museums Office and after having collected all relevant information, more particularly from the National Committee on Intellectual Co-operation concerned, to express an opinion on the expediency of the steps to be taken and on the procedure to be followed in each individual case.

The members of the Conference, after having visited in the course of their deliberations and during the study cruise which they were able to make on this occasion, a number of excavation sites and ancient Greek monuments, unanimously paid a tribute to the Greek Government, which, for many years past, has been itself responsible for extensive works and, at the same time, has accepted the collaboration of archaeologists and experts from every country.

The members of the Conference there saw an example of activity which can but contribute to the realisation of the aims of intellectual co-operation, the need for which manifested itself during their work.

*b) The role of education in the respect of monuments*

The Conference, firmly convinced that the best guarantee in the matter of the preservation of monuments and works of art derives from the respect and attachment of the peoples themselves;

Considering that these feelings can very largely be promoted by appropriate action on the part of public authorities;

Recommends that educators should urge children and young people to abstain from disfiguring monuments of every description and that they should teach them to take a greater and more general interest in the protection of these concrete testimonies of all ages of civilisation.

*c) Value of international documentation.*

The Conference expresses the wish that:

1. Each country, or the institutions created or recognised competent for this purpose, publish an inventory of ancient monuments, with photographs and explanatory notes;
2. Each country constitute official records which shall contain all documents relating to its historic monuments;
3. Each country deposit copies of its publications on artistic and historic monuments with the International Museums Office;
4. The Office devote a portion of its publications to articles on the general processes and methods employed in the preservation of historic monuments;
5. The Office study the best means of utilising the information so centralised

<https://www.icomos.org/en/167-the-athens-charter-for-the-restoration-of-historic-monume>







**HAGA 1954**

## **CONVENTION FOR THE PROTECTION OF CULTURAL PROPERTY IN THE EVENT OF ARMED CONFLICT**

**United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization**

The High Contracting Parties,

**Recognizing** that cultural property has suffered grave damage during recent armed conflicts and that, by reason of the developments in the technique of warfare, it is in increasing danger of destruction;

**Being convinced** that damage to cultural property belonging to any people whatsoever means damage to the cultural heritage of all mankind, since each people makes its contribution to the culture of the world;

**Considering** that the preservation of the cultural heritage is of great importance for all peoples of the world and that it is important that this heritage should receive international protection;

**Guided** by the principles concerning the protection of cultural property during armed conflict, as established in the Conventions of The Hague of 1899 and of 1907 and in the Washington Pact of 15 April, 1935;

**Being of the opinion** that such protection cannot be effective unless both national and international measures have been taken to organize it in time of peace;

**Being determined** to take all possible steps to protect cultural property;

**Have agreed upon the following provisions:**

## **CHAPTER I. GENERAL PROVISIONS REGARDING PROTECTION**

### **Article 1. Definition of cultural property**

For the purposes of the present Convention, the term 'cultural property' shall cover, irrespective of origin or ownership:

- (a) movable or immovable property of great importance to the cultural heritage of every people, such as monuments of architecture, art or history, whether religious or secular; archaeological sites; groups of buildings which, as a whole, are of historical or artistic interest; works of art; manuscripts, books and other objects of artistic, historical or archaeological interest; as well as scientific collections and important collections of books or archives or of reproductions of the property defined above;
- (b) buildings whose main and effective purpose is to preserve or exhibit the movable cultural property defined in sub-paragraph (a) such as museums, large libraries and depositories of archives, and refuges intended to shelter, in the event of armed conflict, the movable cultural property defined in sub-paragraph (a);
- (c) centers containing a large amount of cultural property as defined in sub-paragraphs (a) and (b), to be known as 'centers containing monuments'.

### **Article 2. Protection of cultural property**

For the purposes of the present Convention, the protection of cultural property shall comprise the safeguarding of and respect for such property.

### **Article 3. Safeguarding of cultural property**

The High Contracting Parties undertake to prepare in time of peace for the safeguarding of cultural property situated within their own territory against the foreseeable effects of an armed conflict, by taking such measures as they consider appropriate.

### **Article 4. Respect for cultural property**

1. The High Contracting Parties undertake to respect cultural property situated within their own territory as well as within the territory of other High Contracting Parties by refraining from any use of the property and its immediate surroundings or of the appliances in use for its protection for purposes which are likely to expose it to destruction or damage in the event of armed conflict; and by refraining from any act of hostility, directed against such property.
2. The obligations mentioned in paragraph 1 of the present Article may be waived only in cases where military necessity imperatively requires such a waiver.
3. The High Contracting Parties further undertake to prohibit, prevent and, if necessary, put a stop to any form of theft, pillage or misappropriation of, and any acts of vandalism directed against, cultural property. They shall refrain from requisitioning movable cultural property situated in the territory of another High Contracting Party.
4. They shall refrain from any act directed by way of reprisals against cultural property.
5. No High Contracting Party may evade the obligations incumbent upon it under the present Article, in respect of another High Contracting Party, by reason of the fact that the latter has not applied the measures of safeguard referred to in Article 3.

### **Article 5. Occupation**

1. Any High Contracting Party in occupation of the whole or part of the territory of another High Contracting Party shall as far as possible support the competent national authorities of the occupied country in safeguarding and preserving its cultural property.
2. Should it prove necessary to take measures to preserve cultural property situated in occupied territory and damaged by military operations, and should the competent national authorities be unable to take such measures, the Occupying Power shall, as far as possible, and in close co-operation with such authorities, take the most necessary measures of preservation.

3. Any High Contracting Party whose government is considered their legitimate government by members of a resistance movement, shall, if possible, draw their attention to the obligation to comply with those provisions of the Convention dealing with respect for cultural property.

#### **Article 6. Distinctive marking of cultural property**

In accordance with the provisions of Article 16, cultural property may bear a distinctive emblem so as to facilitate its recognition.

#### **Article 7. Military measures**

1. The High Contracting Parties undertake to introduce in time of peace into their military regulations or instructions such provisions as may ensure observance of the present Convention, and to foster in the members of their armed forces a spirit of respect for the culture and cultural property of all peoples.
2. The High Contracting Parties undertake to plan or establish in peacetime, within their armed forces, services or specialist personnel whose purpose will be to secure respect for cultural property and to co-operate with the civilian authorities responsible for safeguarding it.

## **CHAPTER II. SPECIAL PROTECTION**

#### **Article 8. Granting of special protection**

1. There may be placed under special protection a limited number of refuges intended to shelter movable cultural property in the event of armed conflict, of centers containing monuments and other immovable cultural property of very great importance, provided that they:
  - (a) are situated at an adequate distance from any large industrial center or from any important military objective constituting a vulnerable point, such as, for example, an aerodrome, broadcasting station, establishment engaged upon work of national defense, a port or railway station of relative importance or a main line of communication;
  - (b) are not used for military purposes.

2. A refuge for movable cultural property may also be placed under special protection, whatever its location, if it is so constructed that, in all probability, it will not be damaged by bombs
3. A center containing monuments shall be deemed to be used for military purposes whenever it is used for the movement of military personnel or material, even in transit. The same shall apply whenever activities directly connected with military operations, the stationing of military personnel, or the production of war material are carried on within the center.
4. The guarding of cultural property mentioned in paragraph 1 above by armed custodians specially empowered to do so, or the presence, in the vicinity of such cultural property, of police forces normally responsible for the maintenance of public order shall not be deemed to be used for military purposes.
5. If any cultural property mentioned in paragraph 1 of the present Article is situated near an important military objective as defined in the said paragraph, it may nevertheless be placed under special protection if the High Contracting Party asking for that protection undertakes, in the event of armed conflict, to make no use of the objective and particularly, in the case of a port, railway station or aerodrome, to divert all traffic there from. In that event, such diversion shall be prepared in time of peace.
6. Special protection is granted to cultural property by its entry in the "Inter-national Register of Cultural Property under Special Protection". This entry shall only be made, in accordance with the provisions of the present Convention and under the conditions provided for in the Regulations for the execution of the Convention.

#### **Article 9. Immunity of cultural property under special protection**

The High Contracting Parties undertake to ensure the immunity of cultural property under special protection by refraining, from the time of entry in the International Register, from any act of hostility directed against such property and, except for the cases provided for in paragraph 5 of Article 8, from any use of such property or its surroundings for military purposes.

#### **Article 10. Identification and control**

During an armed conflict, cultural property under special protection shall be marked with the distinctive emblem described in Article 16, and shall be open to international control as provided for in the Regulations for the execution of the Convention.

#### **Article 11. Withdrawal of immunity**

1. If one of the High Contracting Parties commits, in respect of any item of cultural property under special protection, a violation of the obligations under Article 9, the opposing Party shall, so long as this violation persists, be released from the obligation to ensure the immunity of the property concerned. Nevertheless, whenever possible, the latter Party shall first request the cessation of such violation within a reasonable time.
2. Apart from the case provided for in paragraph 1 of the present Article, immunity shall be withdrawn from cultural property under special protection only in exceptional cases of unavoidable military necessity, and only for such time as that necessity continues. Such necessity can be established only by the officer commanding a force the equivalent of a division in size or larger. Whenever circumstances permit, the opposing Party shall be notified, a reasonable time in advance, of the decision to withdraw immunity.
3. The Party withdrawing immunity shall, as soon as possible, so inform the Commissioner-General for cultural property provided for in the Regulations for the execution of the Convention, in writing, stating the reasons.

### **CHAPTER III. TRANSPORT OF CULTURAL PROPERTY**

#### **Article 12. Transport under special protection**

1. Transport exclusively engaged in the transfer of cultural property, whether within a territory or to another territory, may, at the request of the High Contracting Party concerned, take place under special protection in accordance with the conditions specified in the Regulations for the execution of the Convention.

2. Transport under special protection shall take place under the international supervision provided for in the aforesaid Regulations and shall display the distinctive emblem described in Article 16.
3. The High Contracting Parties shall refrain from any act of hostility directed against transport under special protection.

#### **Article 13. Transport in urgent cases**

1. If a High Contracting Party considers that the safety of certain cultural property requires its transfer and that the matter is of such urgency that the procedure laid down in Article 12 cannot be followed, especially at the beginning of an armed conflict, the transport may display the distinctive emblem described in Article 16, provided that an application for immunity referred to in Article 12 has not already been made and refused. As far as possible, notification of transfer should be made to the opposing Parties. Nevertheless, transport conveying cultural property to the territory of another country may not display the distinctive emblem unless immunity has been expressly granted to it.
2. The High Contracting Parties shall take, so far as possible, the necessary precautions to avoid acts of hostility directed against the transport described in paragraph 1 of the present Article and displaying the distinctive emblem.

#### **Article 14. Immunity from seizure, capture and prize**

1. Immunity from seizure, placing in prize, or capture shall be granted to:
  - (a) cultural property enjoying the protection provided for in Article 12 or that provided for in Article 13;
  - (b) the means of transport exclusively engaged in the transfer of such cultural property.
2. Nothing in the present Article shall limit the right of visit and search.

### **CHAPTER IV. PERSONNEL**

#### **Article 15. Personnel**

As far as is consistent with the interests of security, personnel engaged in the protection of cultural property shall, in the interests of such property,

be respected and, if they fall into the hands of the opposing Party, shall be allowed to continue to carry out their duties whenever the cultural property for which they are responsible has also fallen into the hands of the opposing Party.

## CHAPTER V. THE DISTINCTIVE EMBLEM

### Article 16. Emblem of the convention

1. The distinctive emblem of the Convention shall take the form of a shield, pointed below, persaltire blue and white (a shield consisting of a royal-blue square, one of the angles of which forms the point of the shield, and of a royal-blue triangle above the square, the space on either side being taken up by a white triangle).
2. The emblem shall be used alone, or repeated three times in a triangular formation (one shield below), under the conditions provided for in Article 17.

### Article 17. Use of the emblem

1. The distinctive emblem repeated three times may be used only as a means of identification of:
  - (a) immovable cultural property under special protection;
  - (b) the transport of cultural property under the conditions provided for in Articles 12 and 13;
  - (c) improvised refuges, under the conditions provided for in the Regulations for the execution of the Convention.
2. The distinctive emblem may be used alone only as a means of identification of:
  - (a) cultural property not under special protection;
  - (b) the persons responsible for the duties of control in accordance with the Regulations for the execution of the Convention;
  - (c) the personnel engaged in the protection of cultural property;
  - (d) the identity cards mentioned in the Regulations for the execution of the Convention.

3. During an armed conflict, the use of the distinctive emblem in any other cases than those mentioned in the preceding paragraphs of the present Article, and the use for any purpose whatever of a sign resembling the distinctive emblem, shall be forbidden.
4. The distinctive emblem may not be placed on any immovable cultural property unless at the same time there is displayed an authorization duly dated and signed by the competent authority of the High Contracting Party.

## CHAPTER VI. SCOPE OF APPLICATION OF THE CONVENTION

### Article 18. Application of the Convention

1. Apart from the provisions which shall take effect in time of peace, the present Convention shall apply in the event of declared war or of any other armed conflict which may arise between two or more of the High Contracting Parties, even if the state of war is not recognized by, one or more of them.
2. The Convention shall also apply to all cases of partial or total occupation of the territory of a High Contracting Party, even if the said occupation meets with no armed resistance.
3. If one of the Powers in conflict is not a Party to the present Convention, the Powers which are Parties thereto shall nevertheless remain bound by it in their mutual relations. They shall furthermore be bound by the Convention, in relation to the said Power, if the latter has declared, that it accepts the provisions thereof and so long as it applies them.

### Article 19. Conflicts not of an international character

1. In the event of an armed conflict not of an international character occurring within the territory of one of the High Contracting Parties, each party to the conflict shall be bound to apply, as, a minimum, the provisions of the present Convention which relate to respect for cultural property.



2. The parties to the conflict shall endeavour to bring into force, by means of special agreements, all or part of the other provisions of the present Convention.
3. The United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization may offer its services to the parties to the conflict.
4. The application of the preceding provisions shall not affect the legal status of the parties to the conflict.

## CHAPTER VII. EXECUTION OF THE CONVENTION

### Article 20. Regulations for the execution of the Convention

The procedure by which the present Convention is to be applied is defined in the Regulations for its execution, which constitute an integral part thereof.

### Article 21. Protecting powers

The present Convention and the Regulations for its execution shall be applied with the co-operation of the Protecting Powers responsible for safeguarding the interests of the Parties to the conflict.

### Article 22. Conciliation procedure

1. The Protecting Powers shall lend their good offices in all cases where they may deem it useful in the interests of cultural property, particularly if there is disagreement between the Parties to the conflict as to the application or interpretation of the provisions of the present Convention or the Regulations for its execution.
2. For this purpose, each of the Protecting Powers may, either at the invitation of one Party, of the Director-General of the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization, or on its own initiative, propose to the Parties to the conflict a meeting of their representatives, and in particular of the authorities responsible for the protection of cultural property, if considered appropriate on suitably chosen neutral territory. The Parties to the conflict shall be bound to give effect to the proposals for meeting made to them.

The Protecting Powers shall propose for approval by the Parties to the conflict a person belonging to a neutral Power or a person presented by the Director General of the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization, which person shall be invited to take part in such a meeting in the capacity of Chairman.

### Article 23. Assistance of UNESCO

1. The High Contracting Parties may call upon the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization for technical assistance in organizing the protection of their cultural property, or in connexion with any other problem arising out of the application of the present Convention or the Regulations for its execution. The Organization shall accord such assistance within the limits fixed by its programme and by its resources.
2. The Organization is authorized to make, on its own initiative, proposals on this matter to the High Contracting Parties.

### Article 24. Special agreements

1. The High Contracting Parties may conclude special agreements for all matters concerning which they deem it suitable to make separate provision.
2. No special agreement may be concluded which would diminish the protection afforded by the present Convention to cultural property and to the personnel engaged in its protection.

### Article 25. Dissemination of the Convention

The High Contracting Parties undertake, in time of peace as in time of armed conflict, to disseminate the text of the present Convention and the Regulations for its execution as widely as possible in their respective countries. They undertake, in particular, to include the study thereof in their programmes of military and, if possible, civilian training, so that its principles are made known to the whole population, especially the armed forces and personnel engaged in the protection of cultural property.

### Article 26. Translations reports

1. The High Contracting Parties shall communicate to one another, through the Director-General of the United Nations Educational,

Scientific and Cultural Organization, the official translations of the present Convention and of the Regulations for its execution.

2. Furthermore, at least once every four years, they shall forward to the Director-General a report giving whatever information they think suitable concerning any measures being taken, prepared or contemplated by their respective administrations in fulfillment of the present Convention and of the Regulations for its execution.

#### **Article 27. Meetings**

1. The Director-General of the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization may, with the approval of the Executive Board, convene meetings of representatives of the High Contracting Parties. He must convene such a meeting if at least one-fifth of the High Contracting Parties so request.
2. Without prejudice to any other functions which have been conferred on it by the present Convention or the Regulations for its execution, the purpose of the meeting will be to study problems concerning the application of the Convention and of the Regulations for its execution, and to formulate recommendations in respect thereof.
3. The meeting may further undertake a revision of the Convention or the Regulations for its execution if the majority of the High Contracting Parties are represented, and in accordance with the provisions of Article 39.

#### **Article 28. Sanctions**

The High Contracting Parties undertake to take, within the framework of their ordinary criminal jurisdiction, all necessary steps to prosecute and impose penal or disciplinary sanctions upon those persons, of whatever nationality, who commit or order to be committed a breach of the present Convention.

#### **FINAL PROVISIONS**

##### **Article 29. Languages**

1. The present Convention is drawn up in English, French, Russian and Spanish, the four texts being equally authoritative.
2. The United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization shall arrange for translations of the Convention into the other official

languages of its General Conference.

##### **Article 30. Signature**

The present Convention shall bear the date of 14 May, 1954 and, until the date of 31 December, 1954, shall remain open for signature by all States invited to the Conference which met at The Hague from 21 April, 1954 to 14 May, 1954.

##### **Article 31. Ratification**

1. The present Convention shall be subject to ratification by signatory States in accordance with their respective constitutional procedures.
2. The instruments of ratification shall be deposited with the Director-General of the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization.

##### **Article 32. Accession**

From the date of its entry into force, the present Convention shall be open for accession by all States mentioned in Article 30 which have not signed it, as well as any other State invited to accede by the Executive Board of the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization. Accession shall be effected by the deposit of an instrument of accession with the Director-General of the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization.

##### **Article 33. Entry into force**

1. The present Convention shall enter into force three months after five instruments of ratification have been deposited.
2. Thereafter, it shall enter into force, for each High Contracting Party, three months after the deposit of its instrument of ratification or accession.
3. The situations referred to in Articles 18 and 19 shall give immediate effect to ratifications or accessions deposited by the Parties to the conflict either before or after the beginning of hostilities or occupation. In such cases the Director-General of the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization shall transmit the communications referred to in Article 38 by the speediest method.

#### **Article 34. Effective application**

1. Each State Party to the Convention on the date of its entry into force shall take all necessary measures to ensure its effective application within a period of six months after such entry into force.
2. This period shall be six months from the date of deposit of the instruments of ratification or accession for any State which deposits its instrument of ratification or accession after the date of the entry into force of the Convention.

#### **Article 35. Territorial extension of the Convention**

Any High Contracting Party may, at the time of ratification or accession, or at any time thereafter, declare by notification addressed to the Director-General of the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization, that the present Convention shall extend to all or any of the territories for whose international relations it is responsible. The said notification shall take effect three months after the date of its receipt.

#### **Article 36. Relation to previous conventions**

1. In the relations between Powers which are bound by the Conventions of The Hague concerning the Laws and Customs of War on Land (IV) and concerning Naval Bombardment in Time of War (IX), whether those of 29 July, 1899 or those of 18 October, 1907, and which are Parties to the present Convention, this last Convention shall be supplementary to the aforementioned Convention (IX) and to the Regulations annexed to the aforementioned Convention (IV) and shall substitute for the emblem described in Article 5 of the aforementioned Convention (IX) the emblem described in Article 16 of the present Convention, in cases in which the present Convention and the Regulations for its execution provide for the use of this distinctive emblem.
2. In the relations between Powers which are bound by the Washington Pact of 15 April, 1935 for the Protection of Artistic and Scientific Institutions and of Historic Monuments (Roerich Pact) and which are Parties to the present Convention, the latter Convention shall be supplementary to the Roerich Pact and shall substitute for the

distinguishing flag described in Article III of the Pact the emblem defined in Article 16 of the present Convention, in cases in which the present Convention and the Regulations for its execution provide for the use of this distinctive emblem.

#### **Article 37. Denunciation**

1. Each High Contracting Party may denounce the present Convention, on its own behalf, or on behalf of any territory for whose international relations it is responsible.
2. The denunciation shall be notified by an instrument in writing, deposited with the Director-General of the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization.
3. The denunciation shall take effect one year after the receipt of the instrument of denunciation. However, if, on the expiry of this period, the denouncing Party is involved in an armed conflict, the denunciation shall not take effect until the end of hostilities, or until the operations of repatriating cultural property are completed, whichever is the later.

#### **Article 38. Notifications**

The Director-General of the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization shall inform the States referred to in Articles 30 and 32, as well as the United Nations, of the deposit of all the instruments of ratification, accession or acceptance provided for in Articles 31, 32 and 39 and of the notifications and denunciations provided for respectively in Articles 35, 37 and 39.

#### **Article 39. Revision of the Convention and of the Regulations for its execution**

1. Any High Contracting Party may propose amendments to the present Convention or the Regulations for its execution. The text of any proposed amendment shall be communicated to the Director-General of the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization who shall transmit it to each High Contracting Party with the request that such Party reply within four months stating whether it:
  - (a) desires that a Conference be convened to consider the proposed amendment;

- (b) favours the acceptance of the proposed amendment without a Conference; or
  - (c) favours the rejection of the proposed amendment without a Conference.
2. The Director-General shall transmit the replies, received under paragraph 1 of the present Article, to all High Contracting Parties.
  3. If all the High Contracting Parties which have, within the prescribed time-limit, stated their views to the Director-General of the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization, pursuant to paragraph 1(b) of this Article, inform him that they favour acceptance of the amendment without a Conference, notification of their decision shall be made by the Director-General in accordance with Article 38. The amendment shall become effective for all the High Contracting Parties on the expiry of ninety days from the date of such notification.
  4. The Director-General shall convene a Conference of the High Contracting Parties to consider the proposed amendment if requested to do so by more than one-third of the High Contracting Parties.
  5. Amendments to the Convention or to the Regulations for its execution, dealt with under the provisions of the preceding paragraph, shall enter into force only after they have been unanimously adopted by the High Contracting Parties represented at the Conference and accepted by each of the High Contracting Parties.
  6. Acceptance by the High Contracting Parties of amendments to, the Convention or to the Regulations for its execution, which have been adopted by the Conference mentioned in paragraphs 4 and 5, shall be effected by the deposit of a formal instrument with the Director-General of the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization.
  7. After the entry into force of amendments to the present Convention or to the Regulations for its execution, only the text of the Convention or of the Regulations for its execution thus amended shall remain open for ratification or accession.

#### **Article 40. Registration**

In accordance with Article 102 of the Charter of the United Nations, the present Convention shall be registered with the Secretariat of the United Nations at the request of the Director-General of the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization.

IN FAITH WHEREOF the undersigned, duly authorized, have signed the present Convention.

Done at The Hague, this fourteenth day of May, 1954, in a single copy which shall be deposited in the archives of the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization, and certified true copies of which shall be delivered to all the States referred to in Articles 30 and 32 as well as to the United Nations.

[http://portal.unesco.org/en/ev.php-URL\\_ID=13637&URL\\_DO=DO\\_TOPIC&URL\\_SECTION=201.html](http://portal.unesco.org/en/ev.php-URL_ID=13637&URL_DO=DO_TOPIC&URL_SECTION=201.html)









**VENICE 1964**

## **INTERNATIONAL CHARTER FOR THE CONSERVATION AND RESTORATION OF MONUMENTS AND SITES (The Venice Charter 1964)**

**II nd International Congress of Architects and Technicians of Historic Monuments,  
Venice, 1964.**

**Adopted by ICOMOS in 1965.**

**Imbued with a message from the past**, the historic monuments of generations of people remain to the present day as living witnesses of their age-old traditions. People are becoming more and more conscious of the unity of human values and regard ancient monuments as a common heritage. The common responsibility to safeguard them for future generations is recognized. It is our duty to hand them on in the full richness of their authenticity.

It is essential that the principles guiding the preservation and restoration of ancient buildings should be agreed and be laid down on an international basis, with each country being responsible for applying the plan within the framework of its own culture and traditions.

By defining these basic principles for the first time, the Athens Charter of 1931 contributed towards the development of an extensive international movement which has assumed concrete form in national documents, in the work of ICOM and UNESCO and in the establishment by the latter of the International Centre for the Study of the Preservation and the Restoration of Cultural Property. Increasing awareness and critical study have been brought to bear on problems which have continually become more complex and varied; now the time has come to examine the Charter afresh in order to make a thorough study of the principles involved and to enlarge its scope in a new document.



**Accordingly, the IInd International Congress of Architects and Technicians of Historic Monuments, which met in Venice from May 25th to 31st 1964, approved the following text:**

## DEFINITIONS

### Article 1.

The concept of a historic monument embraces not only the single architectural work but also the urban or rural setting in which is found the evidence of a particular civilization, a significant development or a historic event. This applies not only to great works of art but also to more modest works of the past which have acquired cultural significance with the passing of time.

### Article 2.

The conservation and restoration of monuments must have recourse to all the sciences and techniques which can contribute to the study and safeguarding of the architectural heritage.

### Article 3.

The intention in conserving and restoring monuments is to safeguard them no less as works of art than as historical evidence.

## CONSERVATION

### Article 4.

It is essential to the conservation of monuments that they be maintained on a permanent basis.

### Article 5.

The conservation of monuments is always facilitated by making use of them for some socially useful purpose. Such use is therefore desirable but it must not change the lay-out or decoration of the building. It is within these limits only that modifications demanded by a change of function should be envisaged and may be permitted.

### Article 6.

The conservation of a monument implies preserving a setting which is not out of scale. Wherever the traditional setting exists, it must be kept. No new construction, demolition or modification which would alter the relations of mass and colour must be allowed.

### Article 7.

A monument is inseparable from the history to which it bears witness and from the setting in which it occurs. The moving of all or part of a monument cannot be allowed except where the safeguarding of that monument demands it or where it is justified by national or international interest of paramount importance.

### Article 8.

Items of sculpture, painting or decoration which form an integral part of a monument may only be removed from it if this is the sole means of ensuring their preservation.

## RESTORATION

### Article 9.

The process of restoration is a highly specialized operation. Its aim is to preserve and reveal the aesthetic and historic value of the monument and is based on respect for original material and authentic documents. It must stop at the point where conjecture begins, and in this case moreover any extra work which is indispensable must be distinct from the architectural composition and must bear a contemporary stamp. The restoration in any case must be preceded and followed by an archaeological and historical study of the monument.

### Article 10.

Where traditional techniques prove inadequate, the consolidation of a monument can be achieved by the use of any modern technique for conservation and construction, the efficacy of which has been shown by scientific data and proved by experience.

#### **Article 11.**

The valid contributions of all periods to the building of a monument must be respected, since unity of style is not the aim of a restoration. When a building includes the superimposed work of different periods, the revealing of the underlying state can only be justified in exceptional circumstances and when what is removed is of little interest and the material which is brought to light is of great historical, archaeological or aesthetic value, and its state of preservation good enough to justify the action. Evaluation of the importance of the elements involved and the decision as to what may be destroyed cannot rest solely on the individual in charge of the work.

#### **Article 12.**

Replacements of missing parts must integrate harmoniously with the whole, but at the same time must be distinguishable from the original so that restoration does not falsify the artistic or historic evidence.

#### **Article 13.**

Additions cannot be allowed except in so far as they do not detract from the interesting parts of the building, its traditional setting, the balance of its composition and its relation with its surroundings.

## **HISTORIC SITES**

#### **Article 14.**

The sites of monuments must be the object of special care in order to safeguard their integrity and ensure that they are cleared and presented in a seemly manner. The work of conservation and restoration carried out in such places should be inspired by the principles set forth in the foregoing articles.

## **EXCAVATIONS**

#### **Article 15.**

Excavations should be carried out in accordance with scientific standards and the recommendation defining international principles to be applied

in the case of archaeological excavation adopted by UNESCO in 1956.

Ruins must be maintained and measures necessary for the permanent conservation and protection of architectural features and of objects discovered must be taken. Furthermore, every means must be taken to facilitate the understanding of the monument and to reveal it without ever distorting its meaning.

All reconstruction work should however be ruled out “*a priori*”. Only anastylosis, that is to say, the reassembling of existing but dismembered parts can be permitted. The material used for integration should always be recognizable and its use should be the least that will ensure the conservation of a monument and the reinstatement of its form.

## **PUBLICATION**

#### **Article 16.**

In all works of preservation, restoration or excavation, there should always be precise documentation in the form of analytical and critical reports, illustrated with drawings and photographs. Every stage of the work of clearing, consolidation, rearrangement and integration, as well as technical and formal features identified during the course of the work, should be included. This record should be placed in the archives of a public institution and made available to research workers. It is recommended that the report should be published.

The following persons took part in the work of the Committee for drafting the International Charter for the Conservation and Restoration of Monuments:

**Piero Gazzola** (Italy), Chairman

**Raymond Lemaire** (Belgium), Reporter

**José Bassegoda-Nonell** (Spain)

**Luis Benavente** (Portugal)

**Djurdje Boskovic** (Yugoslavia)

**Hiroshi Daifuku** (UNESCO)

**P.L. de Vrieze** (Netherlands)

**Harald Langberg** (Denmark)

**Mario Matteucci** (Italy)

**Jean Merlet** (France)

**Carlos Flores Marini** (Mexico)

**Roberto Pane** (Italy)

**S.C.J. Pavel** (Czechoslovakia)

**Paul Philippot** (ICCROM)

**Victor Pimentel** (Peru)

**Harold Plenderleith** (ICCROM)

**Deoclecio Redig de Campos** (Vatican)

**Jean Sonnier** (France)

**Francois Sorlin** (France)

**Eustathios Stikas** (Greece)

**Gertrud Tripp** (Austria)

**Jan Zachwatowicz** (Poland)

**Mustafa S. Zbiss** (Tunisia)

**PARIS 1972**





**PARIS 1972**

# **CONVENTION CONCERNING THE PROTECTION OF THE WORLD CULTURAL AND NATURAL HERITAGE**

**Adopted by General Conference at its seventeenth session  
Paris, 16 november 1972**

The General Conference of the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization meeting in Paris from 17 October to 21 November 1972, at its seventeenth session,

*Noting* that the cultural heritage and the natural heritage are increasingly threatened with destruction not only by the traditional causes of decay, but also by changing social and economic conditions which aggravate the situation with even more formidable phenomena of damage or destruction,

*Considering* that deterioration or disappearance of any item of the cultural or natural heritage constitutes a harmful impoverishment of the heritage of all the nations of the world,

*Considering* that protection of this heritage at the national level often remains incomplete because of the scale of the resources which it requires and of the insufficient economic, scientific, and technological resources of the country where the property to be protected is situated,

*Recalling* that the Constitution of the Organization provides that it will maintain, increase, and diffuse knowledge, by assuring the conservation and protection of the world's heritage, and recommending to the nations concerned the necessary international conventions,

*Considering* that the existing international conventions, recommendations and resolutions concerning cultural and natural property demonstrate the importance, for all the peoples of the world, of safeguarding this unique and irreplaceable property, to whatever people it may belong,

*Considering* that parts of the cultural or natural heritage are of outstanding interest and therefore need to be preserved as part of the world heritage of mankind as a whole,

*Considering* that, in view of the magnitude and gravity of the new dangers threatening them, it is incumbent on the international community as a whole to participate in the protection of the cultural and natural heritage of outstanding universal value, by the granting of collective assistance which, although not taking the place of action by the State concerned, will serve as an efficient complement thereto,

*Considering* that it is essential for this purpose to adopt new provisions in the form of a convention establishing an effective system of collective protection of the cultural and natural heritage of outstanding universal value, organized on a permanent basis and in accordance with modern scientific methods,

*Having decided*, at its sixteenth session, that this question should be made the subject of an international convention,

*Adopts* this sixteenth day of November 1972 this Convention.

## I Definition of the Cultural and Natural Heritage

### Article 1

For the purposes of this Convention, the following shall be considered as “cultural heritage”:

monuments: architectural works, works of monumental sculpture and painting, elements or structures of an archaeological nature, inscriptions, cave dwellings and combinations of features, which are of outstanding universal value from the point of view of history, art or science;

groups of buildings: groups of separate or connected buildings which, because of their architecture, their homogeneity or their place in the landscape, are of outstanding universal value from the point of view of history, art or science;

sites: works of man or the combined works of nature and man, and areas including archaeological sites which are of outstanding universal value from the historical, aesthetic, ethnological or anthropological point of view.

### Article 2

For the purposes of this Convention, the following shall be considered as “natural heritage”:

natural features consisting of physical and biological formations or groups of such formations, which are of outstanding universal value from the aesthetic or scientific point of view;

geological and physiographical formations and precisely delineated areas which constitute the habitat of threatened species of animals and plants of outstanding universal value from the point of view of science or conservation;

natural sites or precisely delineated natural areas of outstanding universal value from the point of view of science, conservation or natural beauty.

### Article 3

It is for each State Party to this Convention to identify and delineate the different properties situated on its territory mentioned in Articles 1 and 2 above.

## II National Protection and International Protection of the Cultural and Natural Heritage

### Article 4

Each State Party to this Convention recognizes that the duty of ensuring the identification, protection, conservation, presentation and transmission to future generations of the cultural and natural heritage referred to in Articles 1 and 2 and situated on its territory, belongs primarily to that State. It will do all it can to this end, to the utmost of its own resources and, where appropriate, with any international assistance and co-operation, in particular, financial, artistic, scientific and technical, which it may be able to obtain.

### Article 5

To ensure that effective and active measures are taken for the protection, conservation and presentation of the cultural and natural heritage situated on its territory, each State Party to this Convention shall endeavor, in so far as possible, and as appropriate for each country:

- a. to adopt a general policy which aims to give the cultural and natural heritage a function in the life of the community and to integrate the protection of that heritage into comprehensive planning programmes;
- b. to set up within its territories, where such services do not exist, one or more services for the protection, conservation and presentation of the cultural and natural heritage with an appropriate staff and possessing the means to discharge their functions;
- c. to develop scientific and technical studies and research and to work out such operating methods as will make the State capable of counteracting the dangers that threaten its cultural or natural heritage;
- d. to take the appropriate legal, scientific, technical, administrative and financial measures necessary for the identification, protection, conservation, presentation and rehabilitation of this heritage; and
- e. to foster the establishment or development of national or regional centres for training in the protection, conservation and presentation of the cultural and natural heritage and to encourage scientific research in this field.

#### **Article 6**

1. Whilst fully respecting the sovereignty of the States on whose territory the cultural and natural heritage mentioned in Articles 1 and 2 is situated, and without prejudice to property right provided by national legislation, the States Parties to this Convention recognize that such heritage constitutes a world heritage for whose protection it is the duty of the international community as a whole to co-operate.
2. The States Parties undertake, in accordance with the provisions of this Convention, to give their help in the identification, protection, conservation and presentation of the cultural and natural heritage referred to in paragraphs 2 and 4 of Article 11 if the States on whose territory it is situated so request.
3. Each State Party to this Convention undertakes not to take any deliberate measures which might damage directly or indirectly the cultural and natural heritage referred to in Articles 1 and 2 situated on the territory of other States Parties to this Convention.

#### **Article 7**

For the purpose of this Convention, international protection of the world cultural and natural heritage shall be understood to mean the establishment of a system of international co-operation and assistance designed to support States Parties to the Convention in their efforts to conserve and identify that heritage.

### **III Intergovernmental Committee for the Protection of the World Cultural and Natural Heritage**

#### **Article 8**

1. An Intergovernmental Committee for the Protection of the Cultural and Natural Heritage of Outstanding Universal Value, called „the World Heritage Committee”, is hereby established within the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization. It shall be composed of 15 States Parties to the Convention, elected by States Parties to the Convention meeting in general assembly during the ordinary session of the General Conference of the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization. The number of States members of the Committee shall be increased to 21 as from the date of the ordinary session of the General Conference following the entry into force of this Convention for at least 40 States.
2. Election of members of the Committee shall ensure an equitable representation of the different regions and cultures of the world.
3. A representative of the International Centre for the Study of the Preservation and Restoration of Cultural Property (ICCROM), a representative of the International Council of Monuments and Sites (ICOMOS) and a representative of the International Union for Conservation of Nature and Natural Resources (IUCN), to whom may be added, at the request of States Parties to the Convention meeting in general assembly during the ordinary sessions of the General Conference of the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization, representatives of other intergovernmental or non-governmental organizations, with similar objectives, may attend the meetings of the Committee in an advisory capacity.



## Article 9

1. The term of office of States members of the World Heritage Committee shall extend from the end of the ordinary session of the General Conference during which they are elected until the end of its third subsequent ordinary session.
2. The term of office of one-third of the members designated at the time of the first election shall, however, cease at the end of the first ordinary session of the General Conference following that at which they were elected; and the term of office of a further third of the members designated at the same time shall cease at the end of the second ordinary session of the General Conference following that at which they were elected. The names of these members shall be chosen by lot by the President of the General Conference of the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization after the first election.
3. States members of the Committee shall choose as their representatives persons qualified in the field of the cultural or natural heritage.

## Article 10

1. The World Heritage Committee shall adopt its Rules of Procedure.
2. The Committee may at any time invite public or private organizations or individuals to participate in its meetings for consultation on particular problems.
3. The Committee may create such consultative bodies as it deems necessary for the performance of its functions.

## Article 11

1. Every State Party to this Convention shall, in so far as possible, submit to the World Heritage Committee an inventory of property forming part of the cultural and natural heritage, situated in its territory and suitable for inclusion in the list provided for in paragraph 2 of this Article. This inventory, which shall not be considered exhaustive, shall include documentation about the location of the property in question and its significance.
2. On the basis of the inventories submitted by States in accordance with paragraph 1, the Committee shall establish, keep up to date and publish,

under the title of „World Heritage List,” a list of properties forming part of the cultural heritage and natural heritage, as defined in Articles 1 and 2 of this Convention, which it considers as having outstanding universal value in terms of such criteria as it shall have established. An updated list shall be distributed at least every two years.

3. The inclusion of a property in the World Heritage List requires the consent of the State concerned. The inclusion of a property situated in a territory, sovereignty or jurisdiction over which is claimed by more than one State shall in no way prejudice the rights of the parties to the dispute.
4. The Committee shall establish, keep up to date and publish, whenever circumstances shall so require, under the title of “List of World Heritage in Danger”, a list of the property appearing in the World Heritage List for the conservation of which major operations are necessary and for which assistance has been requested under this Convention. This list shall contain an estimate of the cost of such operations. The list may include only such property forming part of the cultural and natural heritage as is threatened by serious and specific dangers, such as the threat of disappearance caused by accelerated deterioration, large- scale public or private projects or rapid urban or tourist development projects; destruction caused by changes in the use or ownership of the land; major alterations due to unknown causes; abandonment for any reason whatsoever; the outbreak or the threat of an armed conflict; calamities and cataclysms; serious fires, earthquakes, landslides; volcanic eruptions; changes in water level, floods and tidal waves. The Committee may at any time, in case of urgent need, make a new entry in the List of World Heritage in Danger and publicize such entry immediately.
5. The Committee shall define the criteria on the basis of which a property belonging to the cultural or natural heritage may be included in either of the lists mentioned in paragraphs 2 and 4 of this article.
6. Before refusing a request for inclusion in one of the two lists mentioned in paragraphs 2 and 4 of this article, the Committee shall consult the State Party in whose territory the cultural or natural property in question is situated.

7. The Committee shall, with the agreement of the States concerned, co-ordinate and encourage the studies and research needed for the drawing up of the lists referred to in paragraphs 2 and 4 of this article.

#### **Article 12**

The fact that a property belonging to the cultural or natural heritage has not been included in either of the two lists mentioned in paragraphs 2 and 4 of Article 11 shall in no way be construed to mean that it does not have an outstanding universal value for purposes other than those resulting from inclusion in these lists.

#### **Article 13**

1. The World Heritage Committee shall receive and study requests for international assistance formulated by States Parties to this Convention with respect to property forming part of the cultural or natural heritage, situated in their territories, and included or potentially suitable for inclusion in the lists mentioned referred to in paragraphs 2 and 4 of Article 11. The purpose of such requests may be to secure the protection, conservation, presentation or rehabilitation of such property.
2. Requests for international assistance under paragraph 1 of this article may also be concerned with identification of cultural or natural property defined in Articles 1 and 2, when preliminary investigations have shown that further inquiries would be justified.
3. The Committee shall decide on the action to be taken with regard to these requests, determine where appropriate, the nature and extent of its assistance, and authorize the conclusion, on its behalf, of the necessary arrangements with the government concerned.
4. The Committee shall determine an order of priorities for its operations. It shall in so doing bear in mind the respective importance for the world cultural and natural heritage of the property requiring protection, the need to give international assistance to the property most representative of a natural environment or of the genius and the history of the peoples of the world, the urgency of the work to be done, the resources available to the States on whose territory the threatened property is situated and in particular

the extent to which they are able to safeguard such property by their own means.

5. The Committee shall draw up, keep up to date and publicize a list of property for which international assistance has been granted.
6. The Committee shall decide on the use of the resources of the Fund established under Article 15 of this Convention. It shall seek ways of increasing these resources and shall take all useful steps to this end.
7. The Committee shall co-operate with international and national governmental and non-governmental organizations having objectives similar to those of this Convention. For the implementation of its programmes and projects, the Committee may call on such organizations, particularly the International Centre for the Study of the Preservation and Restoration of cultural Property (the Rome Centre), the International Council of Monuments and Sites (ICOMOS) and the International Union for Conservation of Nature and Natural Resources (IUCN), as well as on public and private bodies and individuals.
8. Decisions of the Committee shall be taken by a majority of two-thirds of its members present and voting. A majority of the members of the Committee shall constitute a quorum.

#### **Article 14**

1. The World Heritage Committee shall be assisted by a Secretariat appointed by the Director-General of the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization.
2. The Director-General of the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization, utilizing to the fullest extent possible the services of the International Centre for the Study of the Preservation and the Restoration of Cultural Property (the Rome Centre), the International Council of Monuments and Sites (ICOMOS) and the International Union for Conservation of Nature and Natural Resources (IUCN) in their respective areas of competence and capability, shall prepare the Committee's documentation and the agenda of its meetings and shall have the responsibility for the implementation of its decisions.

## IV Fund for the Protection of the World Cultural and Natural Heritage

### Article 15

1. A Fund for the Protection of the World Cultural and Natural Heritage of Outstanding Universal Value, called „the World Heritage Fund”, is hereby established.
2. The Fund shall constitute a trust fund, in conformity with the provisions of the Financial Regulations of the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization.
3. The resources of the Fund shall consist of:
  - (a) compulsory and voluntary contributions made by States Parties to this Convention,
  - (b) Contributions, gifts or bequests which may be made by:
    - (i) other States;
    - (ii) the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization, other organizations of the United Nations system, particularly the United Nations Development Programme or other intergovernmental organizations;
    - (iii) public or private bodies or individuals;
  - (c) any interest due on the resources of the Fund;
  - (d) funds raised by collections and receipts from events organized for the benefit of the fund; and
  - (e) all other resources authorized by the Fund’s regulations, as drawn up by the World Heritage Committee.
4. Contributions to the Fund and other forms of assistance made available to the Committee may be used only for such purposes as the Committee shall define. The Committee may accept contributions to be used only for a certain programme or project, provided that the Committee shall have decided on the implementation of such programme or project. No political conditions may be attached to contributions made to the Fund.

### Article 16

1. Without prejudice to any supplementary voluntary contribution, the States Parties to this Convention undertake to pay regularly, every two years, to the World Heritage Fund, contributions, the amount of which, in the form of a uniform percentage applicable to all States, shall be determined by the General Assembly of States Parties to the Convention, meeting during the sessions of the General Conference of the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization. This decision of the General Assembly requires the majority of the States Parties present and voting, which have not made the declaration referred to in paragraph 2 of this Article. In no case shall the compulsory contribution of States Parties to the Convention exceed 1% of the contribution to the regular budget of the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization.
2. However, each State referred to in Article 31 or in Article 32 of this Convention may declare, at the time of the deposit of its instrument of ratification, acceptance or accession, that it shall not be bound by the provisions of paragraph 1 of this Article.
3. A State Party to the Convention which has made the declaration referred to in paragraph 2 of this Article may at any time withdraw the said declaration by notifying the Director-General of the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization. However, the withdrawal of the declaration shall not take effect in regard to the compulsory contribution due by the State until the date of the subsequent General Assembly of States parties to the Convention.
4. In order that the Committee may be able to plan its operations effectively, the contributions of States Parties to this Convention which have made the declaration referred to in paragraph 2 of this Article, shall be paid on a regular basis, at least every two years, and should not be less than the contributions which they should have paid if they had been bound by the provisions of paragraph 1 of this Article.
5. Any State Party to the Convention which is in arrears with the payment of its compulsory or voluntary contribution for the current year and the calendar year immediately preceding it shall not be eligible as a Member of the World Heritage Committee, although this provision shall not apply to the first election.

The terms of office of any such State which is already a member of the Committee shall terminate at the time of the elections provided for in Article 8, paragraph 1 of this Convention.

#### **Article 17**

The States Parties to this Convention shall consider or encourage the establishment of national public and private foundations or associations whose purpose is to invite donations for the protection of the cultural and natural heritage as defined in Articles 1 and 2 of this Convention.

#### **Article 18**

The States Parties to this Convention shall give their assistance to international fund-raising campaigns organized for the World Heritage Fund under the auspices of the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization. They shall facilitate collections made by the bodies mentioned in paragraph 3 of Article 15 for this purpose.

## **V Conditions and Arrangements for International Assistance**

#### **Article 19**

Any State Party to this Convention may request international assistance for property forming part of the cultural or natural heritage of outstanding universal value situated within its territory. It shall submit with its request such information and documentation provided for in Article 21 as it has in its possession and as will enable the Committee to come to a decision.

#### **Article 20**

Subject to the provisions of paragraph 2 of Article 13, sub-paragraph (c) of Article 22 and Article 23, international assistance provided for by this Convention may be granted only to property forming part of the cultural and natural heritage which the World Heritage Committee has decided, or may decide, to enter in one of the lists mentioned in paragraphs 2 and 4 of Article 11.

#### **Article 21**

1. The World Heritage Committee shall define the procedure by which requests to it for international assistance shall be considered and shall

specify the content of the request, which should define the operation contemplated, the work that is necessary, the expected cost thereof, the degree of urgency and the reasons why the resources of the State requesting assistance do not allow it to meet all the expenses. Such requests must be supported by experts' reports whenever possible.

2. Requests based upon disasters or natural calamities should, by reasons of the urgent work which they may involve, be given immediate, priority consideration by the Committee, which should have a reserve fund at its disposal against such contingencies.
3. Before coming to a decision, the Committee shall carry out such studies and consultations as it deems necessary.

#### **Article 22**

Assistance granted by the World Heritage Committee may take the following forms:

1. studies concerning the artistic, scientific and technical problems raised by the protection, conservation, presentation and rehabilitation of the cultural and natural heritage, as defined in paragraphs 2 and 4 of Article 11 of this Convention;
2. provisions of experts, technicians and skilled labour to ensure that the approved work is correctly carried out;
3. training of staff and specialists at all levels in the field of identification, protection, conservation, presentation and rehabilitation of the cultural and natural heritage;
4. supply of equipment which the State concerned does not possess or is not in a position to acquire;
5. low-interest or interest-free loans which might be repayable on a long-term basis;
6. the granting, in exceptional cases and for special reasons, of non-repayable subsidies.

#### **Article 23**

The World Heritage Committee may also provide international assistance to national or regional centres for the training of staff and specialists at all levels in the field of identification, protection, conservation, presentation and rehabilitation of the cultural and natural heritage.

## Article 24

International assistance on a large scale shall be preceded by detailed scientific, economic and technical studies. These studies shall draw upon the most advanced techniques for the protection, conservation, presentation and rehabilitation of the natural and cultural heritage and shall be consistent with the objectives of this Convention. The studies shall also seek means of making rational use of the resources available in the State concerned.

## Article 25

As a general rule, only part of the cost of work necessary shall be borne by the international community. The contribution of the State benefiting from international assistance shall constitute a substantial share of the resources devoted to each programme or project, unless its resources do not permit this.

## Article 26

The World Heritage Committee and the recipient State shall define in the agreement they conclude the conditions in which a programme or project for which international assistance under the terms of this Convention is provided, shall be carried out. It shall be the responsibility of the State receiving such international assistance to continue to protect, conserve and present the property so safeguarded, in observance of the conditions laid down by the agreement.

## VI Educational Programmes

### Article 27

1. The States Parties to this Convention shall endeavor by all appropriate means, and in particular by educational and information programmes, to strengthen appreciation and respect by their peoples of the cultural and natural heritage defined in Articles 1 and 2 of the Convention.
2. They shall undertake to keep the public broadly informed of the dangers threatening this heritage and of the activities carried on in pursuance of this Convention.

## Article 28

States Parties to this Convention which receive international assistance under the Convention shall take appropriate measures to make known the importance of the property for which assistance has been received and the role played by such assistance.

## VII Reports

### Article 29

1. The States Parties to this Convention shall, in the reports which they submit to the General Conference of the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization on dates and in a manner to be determined by it, give information on the legislative and administrative provisions which they have adopted and other action which they have taken for the application of this Convention, together with details of the experience acquired in this field.
2. These reports shall be brought to the attention of the World Heritage Committee.
3. The Committee shall submit a report on its activities at each of the ordinary sessions of the General Conference of the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization.

## VIII Final Clauses

### Article 30

This Convention is drawn up in Arabic, English, French, Russian and Spanish, the five texts being equally authoritative.

### Article 31

1. This Convention shall be subject to ratification or acceptance by States members of the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization in accordance with their respective constitutional procedures.
2. The instruments of ratification or acceptance shall be deposited with the Director-General of the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization.

### **Article 32**

1. This Convention shall be open to accession by all States not members of the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization which are invited by the General Conference of the Organization to accede to it.
2. Accession shall be effected by the deposit of an instrument of accession with the Director-General of the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization.

### **Article 33**

This Convention shall enter into force three months after the date of the deposit of the twentieth instrument of ratification, acceptance or accession, but only with respect to those States which have deposited their respective instruments of ratification, acceptance or accession on or before that date. It shall enter into force with respect to any other State three months after the deposit of its instrument of ratification, acceptance or accession.

### **Article 34**

The following provisions shall apply to those States Parties to this Convention which have a federal or non-unitary constitutional system:

1. with regard to the provisions of this Convention, the implementation of which comes under the legal jurisdiction of the federal or central legislative power, the obligations of the federal or central government shall be the same as for those States parties which are not federal States;
2. with regard to the provisions of this Convention, the implementation of which comes under the legal jurisdiction of individual constituent States, countries, provinces or cantons that are not obliged by the constitutional system of the federation to take legislative measures, the federal government shall inform the competent authorities of such States, countries, provinces or cantons of the said provisions, with its recommendation for their adoption.

### **Article 35**

1. Each State Party to this Convention may denounce the Convention.

2. The denunciation shall be notified by an instrument in writing, deposited with the Director-General of the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization.
3. The denunciation shall take effect twelve months after the receipt of the instrument of denunciation. It shall not affect the financial obligations of the denouncing State until the date on which the withdrawal takes effect.

### **Article 36**

The Director-General of the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization shall inform the States members of the Organization, the States not members of the Organization which are referred to in Article 32, as well as the United Nations, of the deposit of all the instruments of ratification, acceptance, or accession provided for in Articles 31 and 32, and of the denunciations provided for in Article 35.

### **Article 37**

1. This Convention may be revised by the General Conference of the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization. Any such revision shall, however, bind only the States which shall become Parties to the revising convention.
2. If the General Conference should adopt a new convention revising this Convention in whole or in part, then, unless the new convention otherwise provides, this Convention shall cease to be open to ratification, acceptance or accession, as from the date on which the new revising convention enters into force.

### **Article 38**

In conformity with Article 102 of the Charter of the United Nations, this Convention shall be registered with the Secretariat of the United Nations at the request of the Director-General of the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization.

Done in Paris, this twenty-third day of November 1972, in two authentic copies bearing the signature of the President of the seventeenth session of the General Conference and of the Director-General of the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization, which shall be

deposited in the archives of the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization, and certified true copies of which shall be delivered to all the States referred to in Articles 31 and 32 as well as to the United Nations.







AN 17 40 NO  
OOST VRIES LANT

DE HULPE  
brec

# AMSTERDAM 1975

## THE DECLARATION OF AMSTERDAM

Congress on the European Architectural Heritage  
Amsterdam, 21–25 October 1975

The Congress of Amsterdam, the crowning event of European architectural heritage Year 1975, and composed of delegates from all parts of Europe, wholeheartedly welcomes the Charter promulgated by the Committee of Ministers of the Council of Europe, which recognizes that Europe's unique architecture is the common heritage of all her peoples and which declared the intention of the Member States to work with one another and with other European governments for its protection.

The Congress likewise affirms that Europe's architectural heritage is an integral part of the cultural heritage of the whole world and has noted with great satisfaction the mutual undertaking to promote co-operation and exchanges in the field of culture contained in the Final Act of the Congress on Security and Co-operation in Europe adopted at Helsinki in July of this year.



In so doing, the Congress emphasized the following basic considerations:

- a. Apart from its priceless cultural value, Europe's architectural heritage gives to her peoples the consciousness of their common history and common future. Its preservation is, therefore, a matter of vital importance.
- b. The architectural heritage includes not only individual buildings of exceptional quality and their surroundings, but also all areas of towns or villages of historic or cultural interest.
- c. Since these treasures are the joint possession of all the peoples of Europe, they have a joint responsibility to protect them against the growing dangers with which they are threatened – neglect and decay, deliberate demolition, incongruous new construction and excessive traffic.
- d. Architectural conservation must be considered, not as a marginal issue, but as a major objective of town and country planning.
- e. Local authorities, to whom most of the important planning decisions rest, have a special responsibility for the protection of the architectural heritage and should assist one another by the exchange of ideas and information.
- f. The rehabilitation of old areas should be conceived and carried out in such a way as to ensure that, where possible, this does not necessitate a major change in the social composition of the residents, all sections of society should share in the benefits of restoration financed by public funds.
- g. The legislative and administrative measures required should be strengthened and made more effective in all countries,
- h. To help meet the cost of restoration, adaptation and maintenance of buildings and areas of architectural or historic interest, adequate financial assistance should be made available to local authorities and financial support and fiscal relief should likewise be made available to private owners.
- i. The architectural heritage will survive only if it is appreciated by the public and in particular by the younger generation. Educational programmes for all ages should, therefore, give increased attention to this subject.
- j. Encouragement should be given to independent organizations – international, national and local – which help to awake public interest.
- k. Since the new buildings of today will be the heritage of tomorrow, every effort must be made to ensure that contemporary architecture is of a high quality.

In view of the recognition by the Committee of Ministers in the European Charter of the architectural heritage that it is the duty of the Council of Europe to ensure that the Member States pursue coherent policies in a spirit of solidarity, it is essential that periodic reports should be made on the progress of architectural conservation in all European countries in a way which will promote an exchange of experience.

The Congress calls upon governments, parliaments, spiritual and cultural institutions, professional institutes, commerce, industry, independent associations and all individual citizens to give their full support to the objectives of this Declaration and to do all in their power to secure their implementation.

Only in this way can Europe's irreplaceable architectural heritage be preserved, for the enrichment of the lives of all her peoples now and in the future.

Arising from its deliberations, the Congress submits its conclusions and recommendations, as set out below.

Unless a new policy of protection and integrated conservation is urgently implemented, our society will shortly find itself obliged to give up the heritage of buildings and sites which form its traditional environment. Protection is needed today for historic towns, the old quarters of cities, and towns and villages with a traditional character as well as historic parks and gardens. The conservation of these architectural complexes can only be conceived in a wide perspective, embracing all buildings of cultural value, from the greatest to the humblest – not forgetting those of our own day together with their surroundings. This overall protection will complement the piecemeal protection of individual and isolated monuments and sites.

The significance of the architectural heritage and justification for conserving it are now more clearly perceived. It is known that historical continuity must be preserved in the environment if we are to maintain or create surroundings which enable individuals to find their identity and feel secure despite abrupt social changes. A new type of town-planning is seeking to recover the enclosed spaces, the human dimensions, the inter-penetration of functions and the social and cultural diversity that characterized the urban fabric of old towns. But it is also being realized that the conservation of ancient buildings helps to economise resources and combat waste, one of the major preoccupations of present-day society. It has been proved that historic buildings can be given new functions which correspond to the needs of contemporary life. Furthermore, conservation calls for artists and highly-qualified craftsmen whose talents and know-how have to be kept alive and passed on. Lastly, the rehabilitation of existing housing helps to check encroachments on agricultural land and to obviate, or appreciably diminish, movements of population – a very important advantage of conservation policy.

Although, for all these reasons, there seems a stronger justification than ever today for the conservation of the architectural heritage, it must be placed on firm and lasting foundations. It must accordingly be made the subject of basis research and a feature of all educational courses **and cultural** development programmes.

The conservation of the architectural heritage: one of the major objectives of urban and regional planning.

The conservation of the architectural heritage should become an integral part of urban and regional planning, instead of being treated as a secondary consideration or one requiring action here and there as has so often been the case in the recent past. A permanent dialogue between conservationists and those responsible for planning is thus indispensable.

Planners should recognize that not all areas are the same and that they should therefore be dealt with according to their individual characteristics. The recognition of the claims of the aesthetic and cultural values of the architectural heritage should lead to the adoption of specific aims and planning rules for old architectural complexes.

It is not enough to simply superimpose, although co-ordinating them, ordinary planning regulations and specific rules for protecting historic buildings.

To make the necessary integration possible, an inventory of buildings, architectural complexes and sites demarcating protected zones around them is required. It should be widely circulated, particularly among regional and local authorities and officials in charge of town and country planning, in order to draw their attention to the buildings and areas worthy of protection. Such an inventory will furnish a realistic basis for conservation as a fundamental qualitative factor in the management of space.

Regional planning policy must take account of the conservation of the architectural heritage and contribute to it. In particular it can induce new activities to establish themselves in economically declining areas in order to check depopulation and thereby prevent the deterioration of old buildings. In addition, decisions on the development of peripheral urban areas can be orientated in such a way as to reduce pressure on the older neighbourhoods; here transport and employment policies and a better distribution of the focal points of urban activity may have an important impact on the conservation of the architectural heritage.

The full development of a continuous policy of conservation requires a large measure of decentralization as well as a regard for local cultures. This means that there must be people responsible for conservation at all levels (central, regional and local) at which planning decisions are taken. The conservation of the architectural heritage, however, should not merely be a matter for experts. The support of public opinion is essential. The population, on the basis of full and objective information, should take a real part in every stage of the work, from the drawing up of inventories to the preparation of decisions,

Lastly, the conservation of the architectural heritage should become a feature of a new long-term approach which pays due attention to criteria of quality and just proportions and which should make it possible henceforth to reject options and aims which are too often governed by short-term considerations, narrow view of technology and, in short, an obsolete outlook.

Integrated conservation involves the responsibility of local authorities and calls for citizens' participation.

Local authorities should have specific and extensive responsibilities in the protection of the architectural heritage. In applying the principles of integrated conservation, they should take account of the continuity of existing social and physical realities in urban and rural communities. The future cannot and should not be built at the expense of the past.

To implement such a policy, which respects the man-made environment intelligently, sensitively and with economy, local authorities should:

- use as a basis the study of the texture of urban and rural areas, notably their structure, their complex functions, and the architectural and volumetric characteristics of their built-up and open spaces;
- afford functions to buildings which, whilst corresponding to the needs of contemporary life, respect their character and ensure their survival;
- be aware that long-term studies on the development of public services (educational, administrative, medical) indicate that excessive size impairs their quality and effectiveness;
- devote an appropriate part of their budget to such a policy. In this context, they should seek from governments the creation of funds specifically earmarked for such purposes. Local authority grants and loans made to private individuals and various associations should be aimed at stimulating their involvement and financial commitment:
- appoint representatives to deal with all matters concerning the architectural heritage and sites;
- set up special agencies to provide direct links between potential users of buildings and their owners;
- facilitate the formation and efficient functioning of voluntary associations for restoration and rehabilitation.

Local authorities should improve their techniques of consultation for ascertaining the opinions of interested parties on conservation plans and should take these opinions into account from the earliest stages

of planning. As part of their efforts to inform the public the decisions of local authorities should be taken in the public eye, using a clear and universally understood language, so that the local inhabitants may learn, discuss and assess the grounds for them. Meeting places should be provided, in order to enable members of the public to consult together. In this respect, methods such as public meetings, exhibitions, opinion polls, the use of the mass media and all other appropriate methods should become common practice.

The education of young people in environmental issues and their involvement with conservation tasks is one of the most important communal requirements.

Proposals or alternatives put forward by groups or individuals should be considered as an important contribution to planning.

Local authorities can benefit greatly from each other's experience. They should therefore establish a continuing exchange of information and ideas through all available channels.

The success of any policy of integrated conservation depends on taking social factors into consideration.

A policy of conservation also means the integration of the architectural heritage into social life.

The conservation effort to be made must be measured not only against the cultural value of the buildings but also against their use-value. The social problems of integrated conservation can be properly posed only by simultaneous reference to both those scales of values.

The rehabilitation of an architectural complex forming part of the heritage is not necessarily more costly than new building on an existing infrastructure or even than building a new complex on a previously undeveloped site. When therefore comparing the cost of these three solutions, whose social consequences are quite different, it is important not to overlook the social costs. These concern not only owners and tenants but also the craftsmen, tradespeople and building contractors on the spot who keep the district alive.

To avoid the laws of the market having free play in restored and rehabilitated districts, resulting in inhabitants who are unable to pay the

increased rents being forced out, public authorities should intervene to reduce the effect of economic factors as they always do when it is a case of low-cost housing. Financial interventions should aim to strike a balance between restoration grants to owners, combined with the fixing of maximum rent, and housing allowances to tenants to cover, in part or in whole, the difference between the old and new rents.

In order to enable the population to participate in the drawing up of programmes they must be given the facts necessary to understand the situation, on the one hand through explaining the historic and architectural value of the buildings to be conserved and on the other hand by being given full details about permanent and temporary rehousing.

This participation is all the more important because it is a matter not only of restoring a few privileged buildings but of rehabilitating whole areas.

This practical way of interesting people in culture would be of considerable social benefit.

Integrated conservation necessitates the adaptation of legislative and administrative measures.

Because the concept of the architectural heritage has been gradually extended from the individual historic building to urban and rural architectural complexes, and to the built testimonies of recent periods, far-reaching legislative reform, in conjunction with an increase in administrative resources, is a pre-requisite to effective action.

This reform must be guided by the need to co-ordinate regional planning legislation with legislation on the protection of the architectural heritage.

This latter must give a new definition of the architectural heritage and the aims of integrated conservation.

In addition it must make special provision for special procedures with regard to:

- the designation and delineation of architectural complexes;
- the mapping out of protective peripheral zones and the limitations on use to be imposed therein in the public interest;
- the preparation of integrated conservation schemes and the inclusion of their provisions in regional planning policies;

- the approval of projects and authorization to carry out work.

In addition the necessary legislation should be enacted in order to:

- ensure a balanced allocation of budgetary resources between rehabilitation and redevelopment respectively;
- grant citizens who decide to rehabilitate an old building at least the same financial advantages as those which they enjoy for new construction;
- revise the system of state financial aid in the light of the new policy of integrated conservation.

As far as possible, the application of building codes, regulations and requirements should be relaxed to meet the needs of integrated conservation.

In order to increase the operational capacity of the authorities, it is necessary to review the structure of the administration to ensure that the departments responsible for the cultural heritage are organized at the appropriate levels and that sufficient qualified personnel and essential scientific, technical and financial resources are put at their disposal.

These departments should assist local authorities, co-operate with regional planning offices and keep in constant touch with public and private bodies.

Integrated conservation necessitates appropriate financial means.

It is difficult to define a financial policy applicable to all countries or to evaluate the consequences of the different measures involved in the planning process, because of their mutual repercussions.

Moreover, this process is itself governed by external factors resulting from the present structure of society.

It is accordingly for every state to devise its own financing methods and instruments.

It can be established with certainty however, that there is scarcely any country in Europe where the financial means allocated to conservation are sufficient.

It is further apparent that no European country has yet devised the ideal administrative machinery to meet the economic requirements of an

integrated conservation policy. In order to solve the economic problems of integrated conservation, it is important – and this is a decisive factor – to draw up legislation subjecting new building to certain restrictions with regard to their volume and dimensions (height, coefficient of utilization etc.) that will make for harmony with its surroundings.

Planning regulations should discourage increased density and promote rehabilitation rather than redevelopment.

Methods must be devised to assess the extra cost occasioned by the constraints of conservation programmes. Where possible, sufficient funds should be available to help owners who are obliged to carry out this restoration work to meet the extra cost – no more and no less.

If the criteria of extra cost were accepted, care would need to be taken of course, to see that the benefit was not diminished by taxation.

The same principle should be applied to the rehabilitation of dilapidated complexes of historic or architectural interest. This would tend to restore the social balance.

The financial advantages and tax concessions available for new building should be accorded in the same proportion for the upkeep and conservation of old buildings, less, of course, any compensation for extra cost that may have been paid.

Authorities should set up Revolving Funds, or encourage them to be established, by providing local authorities or non-profit making associations with the necessary capital. This is particularly applicable to areas where such programmes can become self-financing in the short or the long term because of the rise in value accruing from the high demand for such attractive property.

It is vital, however, to encourage all private sources of finance, particularly coming from industry. Numerous private initiatives have shown the viable part that they can play in association with the authorities at either national or local level.

Integrated conservation requires the promotion of methods, techniques and skills for restoration and rehabilitation.

Methods and techniques of the restoration and rehabilitation of historic complexes should be better exploited and their range developed.

Specialized techniques which have been developed for the restoration of important historic complexes should be henceforth applied to the wide range of buildings and complexes of less outstanding artistic merit.

Steps should be taken to ensure that traditional building materials remain available and that traditional crafts and techniques continue to be used.

Permanent maintenance of the architectural heritage, will, in the long run, obviate costly rehabilitation operations.

Every rehabilitation scheme should be studied thoroughly before it is carried out. Comprehensive documentation should be assembled about materials and techniques and an analysis of costs should be made. This documentation should be collected and housed in appropriate centres.

New materials and techniques should be used only after approval by independent scientific institutions.

Research should be undertaken to compile a catalogue of methods and techniques used for conservation and for this purpose scientific institutions should be created and should co-operate closely with each other. This catalogue should be made readily available and distributed to everyone concerned, thus stimulating the reform of restoration and rehabilitation practices.

There is a fundamental need for better training programme to produce qualified personnel. These programmes should be flexible, multi-disciplinary and should include courses where on-site practical experience can be gained.

International exchange of knowledge, experience and trainees an essential element in the training of all personnel concerned.

This should help to create the required pool of qualified planners, architects, technicians and craftsmen to prepare conservation programmes and help to ensure that particular crafts for restoration work, that are in danger of dying out, will be fostered.

The opportunity for qualifications, conditions of work, salary, employment security and social status should be sufficiently attractive to induce young people to take up and stay in disciplines connected with restoration and rehabilitation work.

Furthermore, the authorities responsible for educational programmes at all levels should endeavour to promote the interest of young people in conservation disciplines.

<https://www.icomos.org/en/and/169-the-declaration-of-amsterdam>











## WARSAW – NAIROBI 1976

# RECOMMENDATION CONCERNING THE SAFEGUARDING AND CONTEMPORARY ROLE OF HISTORIC AREAS

The General Conference of the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization, meeting in Nairobi at its nineteenth session, from 26 October to 30 November 1976,

**Considering** that historic areas are part of the daily environment of human beings everywhere, that they represent the living presence of the past which formed them, that they provide the variety in life's background needed to match the diversity of society, and that by so doing they gain in value and acquire an additional human dimension,

**Considering** that historic areas afford down the ages the most tangible evidence of the wealth and diversity of cultural, religious and social activities and that their safeguarding and their integration into the life of contemporary society is a basic factor in town-planning and land development,

Considering that in face of the dangers of stereotyping and depersonalization, this living evidence of days gone by is of vital importance for humanity and for nations who find in it both the expression of their way of life and one of the corner-stones of their identity,

**Noting** that throughout the world, under the pretext of expansion or modernization, demolition ignorant of what it is demolishing and irrational and inappropriate reconstruction work is causing serious damage to this historic heritage,

**Considering** that historic areas are an immovable heritage whose destruction may often lead to social disturbance, even where it does not lead to economic loss,

**Considering** that this situation entails responsibilities for every citizen and lays on public authorities obligations which they alone are capable of fulfilling,

**Considering** that in order to save these irreplaceable assets from the dangers of deterioration or even total destruction to which they are thus exposed, it is for each State to adopt, as a matter of urgency, comprehensive and energetic policies for the protection and revitalization of historic areas and their surroundings as part of national, regional or local planning,

**Noting** the absence in many cases of a legislation effective and flexible enough concerning the architectural heritage and its interconnexion with town-planning, territorial, regional or local planning,

**Noting** that the General Conference has already adopted international instruments for the protection of the cultural and natural heritage such as the Recommendation on International Principles Applicable to Archaeological Excavations (1956), the Recommendation Concerning the Safeguarding of the Beauty and Character of Landscapes and Sites (1962), the Recommendation **Concerning** the Preservation of Cultural Property Endangered by Public or Private Works (1968), and the Recommendation Concerning the Protection, at National Level, of the Cultural and Natural Heritage (1972),

**Desiring** to supplement and extend the application of the standards and principles laid down in these international instruments,

**Having** before it proposals concerning the safeguarding and contemporary role of historic areas, which question appears on the agenda of the session as item 27,

**Having** decided at its eighteenth session that this question should take the form of a Recommendation to Member States,

**Adopts**, this twenty-sixth day of November 1976, the present Recommendation.

The General Conference recommends that Member States apply the above provisions by adopting, as a national law or in some other form, measures with a view to giving effect to the principles and norms set out in this Recommendation in the territories under their jurisdiction.

The General Conference recommends that Member States bring this Recommendation to the attention of the national, regional and local authorities and of institutions, services or bodies and associations concerned with the safeguarding of historic areas and their environment. The General Conference recommends that Member States report to it, at the dates and in the form determined by it, on action taken by them on this Recommendation.

## I. Definitions

1. For the purposes of the present recommendation:
  - (a) 'Historic and architectural (including vernacular) areas' shall be taken to mean any groups of buildings, structures and open spaces including archaeological and palaeontological sites, constituting human settlements in an urban or rural environment, the cohesion and value of which, from the archaeological, architectural, prehistoric, historic, aesthetic or sociocultural point of view are recognized. Among these 'areas', which are very varied in nature, it is possible to distinguish the following 'in particular : prehistoric sites, historic towns, old urban quarters, villages and hamlets as well as homogeneous monumental groups, it being understood that the latter should as a rule be carefully preserved unchanged.
  - (b) The 'environment' shall be taken to mean the natural or man-made setting which influences the static or dynamic way these areas are perceived or which is directly linked to them in space or by social, economic or cultural ties.
  - (c) 'Safeguarding' shall be taken to mean the identification, protection, conservation, restoration, renovation, maintenance and revitalization of historic or traditional areas and their environment.

## II. General principles

2. Historic areas and their surroundings should be regarded as forming an irreplaceable universal heritage. The governments and the citizens

of the States in whose territory they are situated should deem it their duty to safeguard this heritage and integrate it into the social life of our times. The national, regional or local authorities should be answerable for their performance of this duty in the interests of all citizens and of the international community, in accordance with the conditions of each Member State as regards the allocation of powers.

3. Every historic area and its surroundings should be considered in their totality as a coherent whole whose balance and specific nature depend on the fusion of the parts of which it is composed and which include human activities as much as the buildings, the spatial organization and the surroundings. All valid elements, including human activities, however modest, thus have a significance in relation to the whole which must not be disregarded.
4. Historic areas and their surroundings should be actively protected, against damage of all kinds, particularly that resulting from unsuitable use, unnecessary additions and misguided or insensitive changes such as will impair their authenticity, and from damage due to any form of pollution. Any restoration work undertaken should be based on scientific principles. Similarly, great attention should be paid to the harmony and aesthetic feeling produced by the linking or the contrasting of the various parts which make up the groups of buildings and which give to each group its particular character.
5. In the conditions of modern urbanization, which leads to a considerable increase in the scale and density of buildings, apart from the danger of direct destruction of historic areas, there is a real danger that newly developed areas can ruin the environment and character of adjoining historic areas. Architects and town-planners should be careful to ensure that views from and to monuments and historic areas are not spoilt and that historic areas are integrated harmoniously into contemporary life.
6. At a time when there is a danger that a growing universality of building techniques and architectural forms may create a uniform environment throughout the world, the preservation of historic areas can make an outstanding contribution to maintaining and developing the cultural and social values of each nation. This can contribute to the architectural enrichment of the cultural heritage of the world.

### III. National, regional and local policy

7. In each Member State a national, regional and local policy should be drawn up, in conformity with the conditions of each State as regards the allocation of powers, so that legal, technical, economic and social measures may be taken by the national, regional or local authorities with a view to safeguarding historic areas and their surroundings and adapting them to the requirements of modern life. The policy thus laid down should influence planning at national, regional or local level and provide guidelines for town-planning and regional and rural development planning at all levels, the activities stemming from it forming an essential component in the formulation of aims and programmes, the assignment of responsibilities and the conduct of operations. The co-operation of individuals and private associations should be sought in implementing the safeguarding policy.

### IV. Safeguarding measures

8. Historic areas and their surroundings should be safeguarded in conformity with the principles stated above and with the methods set out below, the specific measures being determined according to the legislative and constitutional competence and the organizational and economic structure of each State.

#### Legal and administrative measures

9. The application of an overall policy for safeguarding historic areas and their surroundings should be based on principles which are valid for the whole of each country. Member States should adapt the existing provisions, or, where necessary, enact new laws and regulations, so as to secure the protection of historic areas and their surroundings taking into account the provisions contained in this chapter and in the following chapters. They should encourage the adaptation or the adoption of regional or local measures to ensure such protection. Laws concerning town and regional planning and housing policy should also be reviewed so as to co-ordinate and bring them into line with the laws concerning the safeguarding of the architectural heritage.

10. The provisions establishing a system for safeguarding historic areas should set out the general principles relating to the establishment of the necessary plans and documents and, in particular: the general conditions and restrictions applicable to the protected areas and their surroundings ;a statement as to the programmes and operations to be planned for the purpose of conservation and provision of public services; maintenance to be carried out and the designation of those to be responsible for it; the fields to which town-planning, redevelopment and rural land management are applicable; the designation of the body responsible for authorizing any restoration, modification, new construction or demolition within the protected perimeter; the means by which the safeguarding programmes are to be financed and carried out.
11. Safeguarding plans and documents should define: the areas and items to be protected; the specific conditions and restrictions applicable to them; the standards to be observed in the work of maintenance, restoration and improvements ; the general conditions governing the establishment of the supply systems and services needed in urban or rural life; the conditions governing new constructions.
12. These laws should also in principle include provisions designed to prevent any infringement of the preservation laws, as well as any speculative rise in property values within the protected areas which could compromise protection and restoration planned in the interests of the community as a whole. These provisions could involve town-planning measures affording a means of influencing the price of building land, such as the establishment of neighborhood or smaller development plans, granting the right of pre-emption to a public body, compulsory purchase in the interests of safeguarding or rehabilitation or automatic intervention in the case of failure to act on the part of the owners, and could provide for effective penalties such as the suspension of operations, compulsory restoration and/or a suitable fine.
13. Public authorities as well as individuals must be obliged to comply with the measures for safeguarding. However, machinery for appeal against arbitrary or unjust decisions should be provided.
14. The provisions concerning the setting up of public and private bodies and concerning public and private work projects should be adapted to the regulations governing the safeguarding of historic areas and their surroundings.
15. In particular, provisions concerning slum property and blocks and the construction of subsidized housing should be planned or amended both to fit in with the safeguarding policy and to contribute to it. The schedule of any subsidies paid should be drawn up and adjusted accordingly, in particular in order to facilitate the development of subsidized housing and public construction by rehabilitating old buildings. All demolition should in any case only concern buildings with no historic or architectural value and the subsidies involved should be carefully controlled. Further, a proportion of the funds earmarked for the construction of subsidized housing should be allocated to the rehabilitation of old buildings.
16. The legal consequences of the protection measures as far as buildings and land are concerned should be made public and should be recorded by a competent official body.
17. Making due allowance for the conditions specific to each country and the allocation of responsibilities within the various national, regional and local authorities, the following principles should underlie the operation of the safeguarding machinery:
  - (a) there should be an authority responsible for ensuring the permanent co-ordination of all those concerned, e.g. national, regional and local public services or groups of individuals;
  - (b) safeguarding plans and documents should be drawn up, once all the necessary advance scientific studies have been carried out, by multidisciplinary teams composed, in particular, of:
    - specialists in conservation and restoration, including art historians; architects and town-planners;
    - sociologists and economists;
    - ecologists and landscape architects ;
    - specialists in public health and social welfare;
    - and, more generally, all specialists in disciplines involved in the protection and enhancement of historic areas ;
  - (c) the authorities should take the lead in sounding the opinions and organizing the participation of the public concerned;

- (d) the safeguarding plans and documents should be approved by the body designated by law;
- (e) the public authorities responsible for giving effect to the safeguarding provisions and regulations at all levels, national, regional and local, should be provided with the necessary staff and given adequate technical, administrative and financial resources.

### Technical, economic and social measures

18. A list of historic areas and their surroundings to be protected should be drawn up at national, regional or local level. It should indicate priorities so that the limited resources available for protection may be allocated judiciously. Any protection measures, of whatever nature, that need to be taken as a matter of urgency should be taken without waiting for the safeguarding plans and documents to be prepared.
19. A survey of the area as a whole, including an analysis of its spatial evolution, should be made. It should cover archaeological, historical, architectural, technical and economic data. An analytical document should be drawn up so as to determine which buildings or groups of buildings are to be protected with great care, conserved under certain conditions, or, in quite exceptional and thoroughly documented circumstances, destroyed. This would enable the authorities to call a halt to any work incompatible with this recommendation. Additionally, an inventory of public and private open spaces and their vegetation should be drawn up for the same purposes.
20. In addition to this architectural survey, thorough surveys of social, economic, cultural and technical data and structures and of the wider urban or regional context are necessary. Studies should include, if possible, demographic data and an analysis of economic, social and cultural activities, ways of life and social relationships, land-tenure problems, the urban infrastructure, the state of the road system, communication networks and the reciprocal links between protected areas and surrounding zones. The authorities concerned should attach the greatest importance to these studies and should bear in mind that valid safeguarding plans cannot be prepared without them.
21. After the survey described above has been completed and before the safeguarding plans and specifications are drawn up, there should in principle be a programming operation in which due account is taken both of town-planning, architectural, economic and social considerations and of the ability of the urban and rural fabric to assimilate functions that are compatible with its specific character. The programming operation should aim at bringing the density of settlement to the desired level and should provide for the work to be carried out in stages as well as for the temporary accommodation needed while it is proceeding, and premises for the permanent rehousing of those inhabitants who cannot return to their previous dwellings. This programming operation should be undertaken with the closest possible participation of the communities and groups of people concerned. Because the social, economic and physical context of historic areas and their surroundings may be expected to change over time, survey and analysis should be a continuing process. It is accordingly essential that the preparation of safeguarding plans and their execution be undertaken on the basis of studies available, rather than being postponed while the planning process is refined.
22. Once the safeguarding plans and specifications have been drawn up and approved by the competent public authority, it would be desirable for them to be executed either by their authors or under their authority.
23. In historic areas containing features from several different periods, preservation should be carried out taking into account the manifestations of all such periods.
24. Where safeguarding plans exist urban development or slum clearance programmes consisting of the demolition of buildings of no architectural or historic interest and which are structurally too unsound to be kept, the removal of extensions and additional storeys of no value, and sometimes even the demolition of recent buildings which break the unity of the area, may only be authorized in conformity with the plan.
25. Urban development or slum clearance programmes for areas not covered by safeguarding plans should respect buildings and other elements of architectural or historic value as well as accompanying buildings. If such elements are likely to be adversely affected by the



programme, safeguarding plans as indicated above should be drawn up in advance of demolition.

26. Constant supervision is necessary to ensure that these operations are not conducive to excessive profits nor serve other purposes contrary to the objectives of the plan.
27. The usual security standards applicable to fire and natural catastrophes should be observed in any urban development or slum clearance programme affecting a historic area, provided that this be compatible with the criteria applicable to the preservation of the cultural heritage. If conflict does occur, special solutions should be sought, with the collaboration of all the services concerned, so as to provide the maximum security, while not impairing the cultural heritage.
28. Particular care should be devoted to regulations for and control over new buildings so as to ensure that their architecture adapts harmoniously to the spatial organization and setting of the groups of historic buildings. To this end, an analysis of the urban context should precede any new construction not only so as to define the general character of the group of buildings but also to analyse its dominant features, e.g. the harmony of heights, colours, materials and forms, constants in the way the facades and roofs are built, the relationship between the volume of buildings and the spatial volume, as well as their average proportions and their position. Particular attention should be given to the size of the lots since there is a danger that any reorganization of the lots may cause a change of mass which could be deleterious to the harmony of the whole.
29. The isolation of a monument through the demolition of its surroundings should not generally be authorized, neither should a monument be moved unless in exceptional circumstances and for unavoidable reasons.
30. Historic areas and their surroundings should be protected from the disfigurement caused by the erection of poles, pylons and electricity or telephone cables and the placing of television aerials and large-scale advertising signs. Where these already exist appropriate measures should be taken for their removal. Bill-posting, neon signs and other kinds of advertisement, commercial signs, street pavements and

furniture, should be planned with the greatest care and controlled so that they fit harmoniously into the whole. Special efforts should be made to prevent all forms of vandalism.

31. Member States and groups concerned should protect historic areas and their surroundings against the increasingly serious environmental damage caused by certain technological developments-in particular the various forms of pollution-by banning harmful industries in the proximity of these areas and by taking preventive measures to counter the destructive effects of noise, shocks and vibrations caused by machines and vehicles. Provision should further be made for measures to counter the harm resulting from overexploitation by tourism.
32. Member States should encourage and assist local authorities to seek solutions to the conflict existing in most historic groupings between motor traffic on the one hand and the scale of the buildings and their architectural qualities on the other. To solve the conflict and to encourage pedestrian traffic, careful attention should be paid to the placing of, and access to, peripheral and even central car parks and routing systems established which will facilitate pedestrian traffic, service access and public transport alike. Many rehabilitation operations such as putting electricity and other cables underground, too expensive if carried out singly, could then be co-ordinated easily and economically with the development of the road system.
33. Protection and restoration should be accompanied by revitalization activities. It would thus be essential to maintain appropriate existing functions, in particular trades and crafts, and establish new ones, which, if they are to be viable, in the long term, should be compatible with the economic and social context of the town, region or country where they are introduced. The cost of safeguarding operations should be evaluated not only in terms of the cultural value of the buildings but also in relation to the value they acquire through the use made of them. The social problems of safeguarding cannot be seen correctly unless reference is made to both these value scales. These functions should answer the social, cultural and economic needs of the inhabitants without harming the specific nature of the

area concerned. A cultural revitalization policy should make historic areas centers of cultural activities and give them a central role to play in the cultural development of the communities around them.

34. In rural areas all works which cause disturbances and all changes of economic and social structure should be carefully controlled so as to preserve the integrity of historic rural communities within their natural setting.
35. Safeguarding activities should couple the public authorities' contribution with the contribution made by the individual or collective owners and the inhabitants and users, separately or together, who should be encouraged to put forward suggestions and generally play an active part. Constant co-operation between the community and the individual should thus be established at all levels particularly through methods such as :information adapted to the types of persons concerned; surveys adapted to the persons questioned; establishment of advisory groups attached to planning teams; representation of owners, inhabitants and users in an advisory function on bodies responsible for decision-making, management and the organization of operations connected with plans for safeguarding, or the creation of public corporations to play a part in the plan's implementation.
36. The formation of voluntary conservation groups and non-profit-making associations and the establishment of honorary or financial rewards should be encouraged so that specially meritorious work in all aspects of safeguarding may be recognized.
37. Availability of the necessary funds for the level of public investment provided for in the plans for the safeguarding of historic areas and their surroundings should be ensured by including adequate appropriations in the budgets of the central, regional and local authorities. All these funds should be centrally managed by public, private or semi-public bodies entrusted with the co-ordination of all forms of financial aid at national, regional or local level and with the channelling of them according to an overall plan of action.
38. Public assistance in the forms described below should be based on the principle that, wherever this is appropriate and necessary, the measures taken by the authorities concerned should take into account the 'extra cost' of restoration, i.e. the additional cost imposed on the owner as compared with the new market or rental value of the building.
39. In general, such public funds should be used primarily to conserve existing buildings including especially buildings for low rental housing and should not be allocated to the construction of new buildings unless the latter do not prejudice the use and functions of existing buildings.
40. Grants, subsidies, loans at favourable rates, or tax concessions should be made available to private owners and to users carrying out work provided for by the safeguarding plans and in conformity with the standards laid down in those plans. These tax concessions, grants-and loans could be made first and foremost to groups of owners or users of living accommodation and commercial property, since joint operations are more economical than individual action. The financial concessions granted to private owners and users should, where appropriate, be dependent on covenants requiring the observance of certain conditions laid down in the public interest, and ensuring the integrity of the buildings such as allowing the buildings to be visited and allowing access to parks, gardens or sites, the taking of photographs, etc.
41. Special funds should be set aside in the budgets of public and private bodies for the protection of groups of historic buildings endangered by large scale public works and pollution. Public authorities should also set aside special funds for the repair of damage caused by natural disasters.
42. In addition, all government departments and agencies active in the field of public works should arrange their programmes and budgets so as to contribute to the rehabilitation of groups of historic buildings by financing work, which is both in conformity with their own aims and the aims of the safeguarding plan.
43. To increase the financial resources -available to them, Member States should encourage the setting up of public and/or private financing agencies for the safeguarding of historic areas and their surroundings. These agencies should have corporate status and be empowered to receive gifts from individuals, foundations and

industrial and commercial concerns. Special tax concessions may be granted to donors.

44. The financing of work of any description carried out for the safeguarding of historic areas and their surroundings by setting up a loans corporation, could be facilitated by public institutions and private credit establishments, which would be responsible for making loans to owners at reduced rates of interest with repayment spread out over a long period.
45. Member States and other levels of government concerned could facilitate the creation of non-profit-making associations responsible for buying and, where appropriate after restoration, selling buildings by using revolving funds established for the special purpose of enabling owners of historic buildings who wish to safeguard them and preserve their character to continue to reside there.
46. It is most important that safeguarding measures should not lead to a break in the social fabric. To avoid hardship to the poorest inhabitants consequent on their having to move from buildings or groups of buildings due for renovation, compensation for rises in rent could enable them to keep their homes, commercial premises and workshops and their traditional living patterns and occupations, especially rural crafts, small-scale agriculture, fishing, etc. This compensation, which would be income-related, would help those concerned to pay the increased rentals resulting from the work carried out.

## V. Research education and information

47. In order to raise the standard of work of the skilled workers and craftsmen required and to encourage the whole population to realize the need for safeguarding and to take part in it, the following measures should be taken by Member States, in accordance with their legal and constitutional competence.
48. Member States and groups concerned should encourage the systematic study of, and research on: town-planning aspects of historic areas and their environment; the interconnexions between

safeguarding and planning at all levels; methods of conservation applicable to historic areas; the alteration of materials ; the application of modern techniques to conservation work; the crafts techniques indispensable for safeguarding.

49. Specific education concerning the above questions and including practical training periods should be introduced and developed. In addition, it is essential to encourage the training of skilled workers and craftsmen specializing in the safeguarding of historic areas, including any open spaces surrounding them. Furthermore, it is necessary to encourage the crafts themselves, which are jeopardized by the processes of industrialization. It is desirable that the institutions concerned co-operate in this matter with specialized international agencies such as the Center for the Study of the Preservation and Restoration of Cultural Property, in Rome, the International Council of Monuments and Sites (ICOMOS) and the International Council of Museums (ICOM).
50. The education of administrative staff for the needs of local development in the field of safeguarding of historic areas should be financed where applicable and needed and directed by the appropriate authorities according to a long-term programme.
51. Awareness of the need for safeguarding work should be encouraged by education in school, out of school and at university and by using information media such as books, the press, television, radio, cinema and travelling exhibitions. Clear, comprehensive information should be provided as to the advantages-not only aesthetic, but also social and economic-to be reaped from a well-conducted policy for the safeguarding of historic areas and their surroundings. Such information should be widely circulated among specialized private and government bodies and the general public so that they may-know why and how their surroundings can be improved in this way.
52. The study of historic areas should be included in education at all levels, especially in history teaching, so as to inculcate in young minds an understanding of and respect for the works of the past and to demonstrate the role of this heritage in modern life. Education

of this kind should make wide use of audio-visual media and of visits to groups of historic buildings.

53. Refresher courses for teachers and guides and the training of instructors should be facilitated so as to aid, groups of young people and adults wishing to learn about historic areas.

## VI. International co-operation

54. Member States should co-operate with regard to the safeguarding of historic areas and their surroundings, seeking aid, if it seems desirable, from international organizations, both intergovernmental and non-governmental, in particular that of the UNESCO-ICOM-ICOMOS Documentation Centre. Such multilateral or bilateral cooperation should be carefully co-ordinated and should take the form of measures such as the following:

- (a) exchange of information in all forms and of scientific and technical publications;
- (b) organization of seminars and working parties on particular subjects;
- (c) provision of study and travel fellowships, and the dispatch of scientific, technical and administrative staff, and equipment;
- (d) joint action to combat pollution of all kinds;
- (e) implementation of large-scale conservation, restoration and rehabilitation projects for historic areas and publication of the experience acquired. In frontier areas where the task of developing and safeguarding historic areas and their surroundings gives rise to problems jointly affecting Member States on either side of the frontier, they should co-ordinate their policies and activities to ensure that the cultural heritage is used and protected in the best possible way;
- (f) mutual assistance between neighboring countries for the preservation of areas of common interest characteristic of the historic and cultural development of the region.

55. In conformity with the spirit and the principles of this recommendation, a Member State should not take any action to demolish or change

the character of the historic quarters, towns and sites, situated in territories occupied by that State. The foregoing is the authentic text of the Recommendation duly adopted by the General Conference of the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization during its nineteenth session, which was held in Nairobi and declared closed the thirtieth day of November 1976.

IN FAITH WHEREOF we have appended our signatures.

***The President of the General Conference The Director-General***

[http://portal.unesco.org/en/ev.php-URL\\_ID=13133&URL\\_DO=DO\\_TOPIC&URL\\_SECTION=201.html](http://portal.unesco.org/en/ev.php-URL_ID=13133&URL_DO=DO_TOPIC&URL_SECTION=201.html)



**BURRA 1979/2013**



NO  
ENTRY

Ore Dressing Tower 1870

# The Burra Charter

(The Australia ICOMOS Charter for Places of Cultural Significance, 2013)

## Preamble

Considering the International Charter for the Conservation and Restoration of Monuments and Sites (Venice 1964), and the Resolutions of the 5th General Assembly of the International Council on Monuments and Sites (ICOMOS) (Moscow 1978), the Burra Charter was adopted by Australia ICOMOS (the Australian National Committee of ICOMOS) on 19 August 1979 at Burra, South Australia. Revisions were adopted on 23 February 1981, 23 April 1988, 26 November 1999 and 31 October 2013.

The Burra Charter provides guidance for the conservation and management of places of cultural significance (cultural heritage places), and is based on the knowledge and experience of Australia ICOMOS members.

Conservation is an integral part of the management of places of cultural significance and is an ongoing responsibility.

## Who is the Charter for?

The Charter sets a standard of practice for those who provide advice, make decisions about, or undertake works to places of cultural significance, including owners, managers and custodians.

## Using the Charter

The Charter should be read as a whole. Many articles are interdependent. The Charter consists of:

- Definitions Article 1
- Conservation Principles Articles 2–13
- Conservation Processes Articles 14–25
- Conservation Practices Articles 26–34
- The Burra Charter Process flow chart.





The key concepts are included in the Conservation Principles section and these are further developed in the Conservation Processes and Conservation Practice sections. The flow chart explains the Burra Charter Process (Article 6) and is an integral part of the Charter. Explanatory Notes also form part of the Charter.

The Charter is self-contained, but aspects of its use and application are further explained, in a series of Australia ICOMOS Practice Notes, in The Illustrated Burra Charter, and in other guiding documents available from the Australia ICOMOS web site: [australia.icomos.org](http://australia.icomos.org).

### **What places does the Charter apply to?**

The Charter can be applied to all types of places of cultural significance including natural, Indigenous and historic places with cultural values. The standards of other organisations may also be relevant. These include the Australian Natural Heritage Charter, Ask First: a guide to respecting Indigenous heritage places and values and Significance 2.0: a guide to assessing the significance of collections.

National and international charters and other doctrine may be relevant. See [australia.icomos.org](http://australia.icomos.org).

### **Why conserve?**

Places of cultural significance enrich people's lives, often providing a deep and inspirational sense of connection to community and landscape, to the past and to lived experiences. They are historical records, that are important expressions of Australian identity and experience. Places of cultural significance reflect the diversity of our communities, telling us about who we are and the past that has formed us and the Australian landscape. They are irreplaceable and precious. These places of cultural significance must be conserved for present and future generations in accordance with the principle of inter-generational equity.

The Burra Charter advocates a cautious approach to change: do as much as necessary to care for the place and to make it useable, but otherwise change it as little as possible so that its cultural significance is retained.

## ARTICLES

### Article 1. Definitions

For the purposes of this Charter:

- 1.1 *Place* means a geographically defined area. It may include elements, objects, spaces and views. Place may have tangible and intangible dimensions.
  
- 1.2 *Cultural significance* means aesthetic, historic, scientific, social or spiritual value for past, present or future generations.  
Cultural significance is embodied in the *place* itself, its *fabric, setting, use, associations, meanings, records, related places and related objects*.  
Places may have a range of values for different individuals or groups.
- 1.3 *Fabric* means all the physical material of the *place* including elements, fixtures, contents and objects.
  
- 1.4 *Conservation* means all the processes of looking after a *place* so as to retain its *cultural significance*.
- 1.5 *Maintenance* means the continuous protective care of a *place*, and its *setting*.  
Maintenance is to be distinguished from repair which involves *restoration* or *reconstruction*.
  
- 1.6 *Preservation* means maintaining a *place* in its existing state and retarding deterioration.
  
- 1.7 *Restoration* means returning a *place* to a known earlier state by removing accretions or by reassembling existing elements without the introduction of new material.
- 1.8 *Reconstruction* means returning a place to a known earlier state and is distinguished from *restoration* by the introduction of new material.

## EXPLANATORY NOTES

Place has a broad scope and includes natural and cultural features. Place can be large or small: for example, a memorial, a tree, an individual building or group of buildings, the location of an historical event, an urban area or town, a cultural landscape, a garden, an industrial plant, a shipwreck, a site with in situ remains, a stone arrangement, a road or travel route, a community meeting place, a site with spiritual or religious connections.

The term cultural significance is synonymous with cultural heritage significance and cultural heritage value.

Cultural significance may change over time and with use.

Understanding of cultural significance may change as a result of new information.

Fabric includes building interiors and sub- surface remains, as well as excavated material.

Natural elements of a place may also constitute fabric. For example the rocks that signify a Dreaming place.

Fabric may define spaces and views and these may be part of the significance of the place.

See also Article 14.

Examples of protective care include:

- maintenance – regular inspection and cleaning of a place, e.g. mowing and pruning in a garden;
- repair involving restoration – returning dislodged or relocated fabric to its original location e.g. loose roof gutters on a building or displaced rocks in a stone bora ring;
- repair involving reconstruction – replacing decayed fabric with new fabric

It is recognised that all places and their elements change over time at varying rates.

New material may include recycled material salvaged from other places. This should not be to the detriment of any place of cultural significance.

## ARTICLES

- 1.9 *Adaptation* means changing a *place* to suit the existing *use* or a proposed use.
- 1.10 *Use* means the functions of a *place*, including the activities and traditional and customary practices that may occur at the place or are dependent on the place.
- 1.11 *Compatible* use means a use which respects the *cultural significance* of a *place*. Such a use involves no, or minimal, impact on cultural significance.
- 1.12 *Setting* means the immediate and extended environment of a *place* that is part of or contributes to its *cultural significance* and distinctive character.
- 1.13 *Related place* means a *place* that contributes to the *cultural significance* of another place.
- 1.14 *Related object* means an object that contributes to the *cultural significance* of a *place* but is not at the place.
- 1.15 *Associations* mean the connections that exist between people and a *place*.
- 1.16 *Meanings* denote what a *place* signifies, indicates, evokes or expresses to people.
- 1.17 *Interpretation* means all the ways of presenting the *cultural significance* of a *place*.

## Conservation Principles

### Article 2. Conservation and management

- 2.1 *Places* of *cultural significance* should be conserved.
- 2.2 The aim of *conservation* is to retain the *cultural significance* of a *place*.
- 2.3 *Conservation* is an integral part of good management of *places* of *cultural significance*.
- 2.4 *Places* of *cultural significance* should be safeguarded and not put at risk or left in a vulnerable state.

### Article 3. Cautious approach

## EXPLANATORY NOTES

Use includes for example cultural practices commonly associated with Indigenous peoples such as ceremonies, hunting and fishing, and fulfillment of traditional obligations. Exercising a right of access may be a use.

Setting may include: structures, spaces, land, water and sky; the visual setting including views to and from the place, and along a cultural route; and other sensory aspects of the setting such as smells and sounds. Setting may also include historical and contemporary relationships, such as use and activities, social and spiritual practices, and relationships with other places, both tangible and intangible.

Objects at a place are encompassed by the definition of place, and may or may not contribute to its cultural significance.

Associations may include social or spiritual values and cultural responsibilities for a place.

Meanings generally relate to intangible dimensions such as symbolic qualities and memories.

Interpretation may be a combination of the treatment of the fabric (e.g. maintenance, restoration, reconstruction); the use of and activities at the place; and the use of introduced explanatory material.

## ARTICLES

3.1 *Conservation* is based on a respect for the existing *fabric, use, associations and meanings*. It requires a cautious approach of changing as much as necessary but as little as possible.

3.2 Changes to a *place* should not distort the physical or other evidence it provides, nor be based on conjecture.

### Article 4. Knowledge, skills and techniques

4.1 *Conservation* should make use of all the knowledge, skills and disciplines which can contribute to the study and care of the *place*.

4.2 Traditional techniques and materials are preferred for the *conservation* of significant *fabric*. In some circumstances modern techniques and materials which offer substantial conservation benefits may be appropriate.

### Article 5. Values

5.1 *Conservation* of a *place* should identify and take into consideration all aspects of cultural and natural significance without unwarranted emphasis on any one value at the expense of others.

5.2 Relative degrees of *cultural significance* may lead to different *conservation* actions at a place.

### Article 6. Burra Charter Process

6.1 The *cultural significance* of a *place* and other issues affecting its future are best understood by a sequence of collecting and analysing information before making decisions. Understanding cultural significance comes first, then development of policy and finally management of the place in accordance with the policy. This is the Burra Charter Process.

6.2 Policy for managing a *place* must be based on an understanding of its *cultural significance*.

## EXPLANATORY NOTES

The traces of additions, alterations and earlier treatments to the fabric of a place are evidence of its history and uses which may be part of its significance. Conservation action should assist and not impede their understanding.

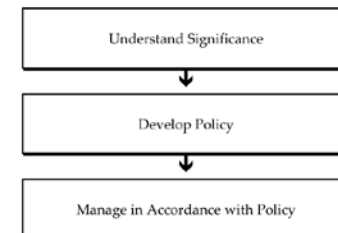
The use of modern materials and techniques must be supported by firm scientific evidence or by a body of experience.

Conservation of places with natural significance is explained in the Australian Natural Heritage Charter. This Charter defines natural significance to mean the importance of ecosystems, biodiversity and geodiversity for their existence value or for present or future generations, in terms of their scientific, social, aesthetic and life-support value.

In some cultures, natural and cultural values are indivisible.

A cautious approach is needed, as understanding of cultural significance may change. This article should not be used to justify actions which do not retain cultural significance.

The Burra Charter Process, or sequence of investigations, decisions and actions, is illustrated below and in more detail in the accompanying flow chart which forms part of the Charter.



## ARTICLES

- 6.3 Policy development should also include consideration of other factors affecting the future of a *place* such as the owner's needs, resources, external constraints and its physical condition.
- 6.4 In developing an effective policy, different ways to retain *cultural significance* and address other factors may need to be explored.
- 6.5 Changes in circumstances, or new information or perspectives, may require reiteration of part or all of the Burra Charter Process.

### Article 7. Use

- 7.1 Where the *use* of a *place* is of *cultural significance* it should be retained.
- 7.2 A *place* should have a *compatible use*.

### Article 8. Setting

*Conservation* requires the retention of an appropriate *setting*. This includes retention of the visual and sensory setting, as well as the retention of spiritual and other cultural relationships that contribute to the *cultural significance* of the *place*.

New construction, demolition, intrusions or other changes which would adversely affect the setting or relationships are not appropriate.

### Article 9. Location

- 9.1 The physical location of a *place* is part of its *cultural significance*. A building, work or other element of a place should remain in its historical location. Relocation is generally unacceptable unless this is the sole practical means of ensuring its survival.
- 9.2 Some buildings, works or other elements of *places* were designed to be readily removable or already have a history of relocation. Provided such buildings, works or other elements do not have significant links with their present location, removal may be appropriate.
- 9.3 If any building, work or other element is moved, it should be moved to an appropriate location and given an appropriate *use*. Such action should not be to the detriment of any place of *cultural significance*.

## EXPLANATORY NOTES

Options considered may include a range of uses and changes (e.g. adaptation) to a place.

The policy should identify a use or combination of uses or constraints on uses that retain the cultural significance of the place. New use of a place should involve minimal change to significant fabric and use; should respect associations and meanings; and where appropriate should provide for continuation of activities and practices which contribute to the cultural significance of the place.

Setting is explained in Article 1.12.

## ARTICLES

### Article 10. Contents

Contents, fixtures and objects which contribute to the *cultural significance* of a *place* should be retained at that place. Their removal is unacceptable unless it is: the sole means of ensuring their security and *preservation*; on a temporary basis for treatment or exhibition; for cultural reasons; for health and safety; or to protect the place. Such contents, fixtures and objects should be returned where circumstances permit and it is culturally appropriate.

### Article 11. Related places and objects

The contribution which *related places* and *related objects* make to the *cultural significance* of the *place* should be retained.

### Article 12. Participation

*Conservation*, *interpretation* and management of a *place* should provide for the participation of people for whom the place has significant *associations* and *meanings*, or who have social, spiritual or other cultural responsibilities for the place.

### Article 13. Co-existence of cultural values

Co-existence of cultural values should always be recognised, respected and encouraged. This is especially important in cases where they conflict.

## Conservation Processes

### Article 14. Conservation processes

*Conservation* may, according to circumstance, include the processes of: retention or reintroduction of a *use*; retention of *associations* and *meanings*; *maintenance*, *preservation*, *restoration*, *reconstruction*, *adaptation* and *interpretation*; and will commonly include a combination of more than one of these. Conservation may also include retention of the contribution that *related places* and *related objects* make to the *cultural significance* of a *place*.

## EXPLANATORY NOTES

For example, the repatriation (returning) of an object or element to a place may be important to Indigenous cultures, and may be essential to the retention of its cultural significance.

Article 28 covers the circumstances where significant fabric might be disturbed, for example, during archaeological excavation.

Article 33 deals with significant fabric that has been removed from a place.

For some places, conflicting cultural values may affect policy development and management decisions. In Article 13, the term cultural values refers to those beliefs which are important to a cultural group, including but not limited to political, religious, spiritual and moral beliefs. This is broader than values associated with cultural significance.

Conservation normally seeks to slow deterioration unless the significance of the place dictates otherwise. There may be circumstances where no action is required to achieve conservation.

## ARTICLES

### Article 15. Change

15.1 Change may be necessary to retain *cultural significance*, but is undesirable where it reduces cultural significance. The amount of change to a *place* and its *use* should be guided by the *cultural significance* of the place and its appropriate *interpretation*.

15.2 Changes which reduce *cultural significance* should be reversible, and be reversed when circumstances permit.

15.3 Demolition of significant *fabric* of a *place* is generally not acceptable. However, in some cases minor demolition may be appropriate as part of *conservation*. Removed significant fabric should be reinstated when circumstances permit.

15.4 The contributions of all aspects of *cultural significance* of a *place* should be respected. If a place includes *fabric*, *uses*, *associations* or *meanings* of different periods, or different aspects of cultural significance, emphasising or interpreting one period or aspect at the expense of another can only be justified when what is left out, removed or diminished is of slight cultural significance and that which is emphasised or interpreted is of much greater cultural significance.

### Article 16. Maintenance

*Maintenance* is fundamental to *conservation*. Maintenance should be undertaken where *fabric* is of *cultural significance* and its maintenance is necessary to retain that *cultural significance*.

### Article 17. Preservation

*Preservation* is appropriate where the existing *fabric* or its condition constitutes evidence of *cultural significance*, or where insufficient evidence is available to allow other *conservation* processes to be carried out.

### Article 18. Restoration and reconstruction

*Restoration* and *reconstruction* should reveal culturally significant aspects of the *place*.

### Article 19. Restoration

*Restoration* is appropriate only if there is sufficient evidence of an earlier state of the *fabric*.

## EXPLANATORY NOTES

When change is being considered, including for a temporary use, a range of options should be explored to seek the option which minimises any reduction to its cultural significance. It may be appropriate to change a place where this reflects a change in cultural meanings or practices at the place, but the significance of the place should always be respected.

Reversible changes should be considered temporary. Non-reversible change should only be used as a last resort and should not prevent future conservation action.

Maintaining a place may be important to the fulfilment of traditional laws and customs in some Indigenous communities and other cultural groups.

Preservation protects fabric without obscuring evidence of its construction and use. The process should always be applied:

- where the evidence of the fabric is of such significance that it should not be altered; or
- where insufficient investigation has been carried out to permit policy decisions to be taken in accord with Articles 26 to 28.

New work (e.g. stabilisation) may be carried out in association with preservation when its purpose is the physical protection of the fabric and when it is consistent with Article 22.

## ARTICLES

### Article 20. Reconstruction

20.1 *Reconstruction* is appropriate only where a *place* is incomplete through damage or alteration, and only where there is sufficient evidence to reproduce an earlier state of the *fabric*. In some cases, reconstruction may also be appropriate as part of a *use* or practice that retains the *cultural significance* of the place.

20.2 *Reconstruction* should be identifiable on close inspection or through additional *interpretation*.

### Article 21. Adaptation

21.1 *Adaptation* is acceptable only where the adaptation has minimal impact on the *cultural significance* of the *place*.

21.2 *Adaptation* should involve minimal change to significant *fabric*, achieved only after considering alternatives.

### Article 22. New work

22.1 New work such as additions or other changes to the *place* may be acceptable where it respects and does not distort or obscure the *cultural significance* of the place, or detract from its *interpretation* and appreciation.

22.2 New work should be readily identifiable as such, but must respect and have minimal impact on the *cultural significance* of the *place*.

### Article 23. Retaining or reintroducing use

Retaining, modifying or reintroducing a significant *use* may be appropriate and preferred forms of *conservation*.

### Article 24. Retaining associations and meanings

24.1 Significant *associations* between people and a *place* should be respected, retained and not obscured. Opportunities for the *interpretation*, commemoration and celebration of these associations should be investigated and implemented.

24.2 Significant *meanings*, including spiritual values, of a *place* should be respected. Opportunities for the continuation or revival of these meanings should be investigated and implemented.

### Article 25. Interpretation

The *cultural significance* of many *places* is not readily apparent, and should be explained by *interpretation*. Interpretation should enhance understanding and engagement, and be culturally appropriate.

## EXPLANATORY NOTES

Places with social or spiritual value may warrant reconstruction, even though very little may remain (e.g. only building footings or tree stumps following fire, flood or storm). The requirement for sufficient evidence to reproduce an earlier state still applies.

Adaptation may involve additions to the place, the introduction of new services, or a new use, or changes to safeguard the place. Adaptation of a place for a new use is often referred to as 'adaptive re---use' and should be consistent with Article 7.2.

New work should respect the significance of a place through consideration of its siting, bulk, form, scale, character, colour, texture and material. Imitation should generally be avoided.

New work should be consistent with Articles 3, 5, 8, 15, 21 and 22.1.

These may require changes to significant fabric but they should be minimised. In some cases, continuing a significant use, activity or practice may involve substantial new work.

For many places associations will be linked to aspects of use, including activities and practices. Some associations and meanings may not be apparent and will require research.

In some circumstances any form of interpretation may be culturally inappropriate.



## ARTICLES

# Conservation Practice

### Article 26. Applying the Burra Charter Process

- 26.1 Work on a *place* should be preceded by studies to understand the place which should include analysis of physical, documentary, oral and other evidence, drawing on appropriate knowledge, skills and disciplines.
- 26.2 Written statements of *cultural significance* and policy for the *place* should be prepared, justified and accompanied by supporting evidence. The statements of significance and policy should be incorporated into a management plan for the place.
- 26.3 Groups and individuals with *associations* with the *place* as well as those involved in its management should be provided with opportunities to contribute to and participate in identifying and understanding the *cultural significance* of the place. Where appropriate they should also have opportunities to participate in its *conservation* and management.
- 26.4 Statements of *cultural significance* and policy for the *place* should be periodically reviewed, and actions and their consequences monitored to ensure continuing appropriateness and effectiveness.

### Article 27. Managing change

- 27.1 The impact of proposed changes, including incremental changes, on the *cultural significance* of a *place* should be assessed with reference to the statement of significance and the policy for managing the place. It may be necessary to modify proposed changes to better retain cultural significance.
- 27.2 Existing *fabric*, *use*, *associations* and *meanings* should be adequately recorded before and after any changes are made to the *place*.

### Article 28. Disturbance of fabric

- 28.1 Disturbance of significant *fabric* for study, or to obtain evidence, should be minimised. Study of a *place* by any disturbance of the fabric, including archaeological excavation, should only be undertaken to provide data essential for decisions on the *conservation* of the place, or to obtain important evidence about to be lost or made inaccessible.

## EXPLANATORY NOTES

The results of studies should be kept up to date, regularly reviewed and revised as necessary.

Policy should address all relevant issues, e.g. use, interpretation, management and change.

A management plan is a useful document for recording the Burra Charter Process, i.e. the steps in planning for and managing a place of cultural significance (Article 6.1 and flow chart). Such plans are often called conservation management plans and sometimes have other names.

The management plan may deal with other matters related to the management of the place.

Monitor actions taken in case there are also unintended consequences.

## ARTICLES

28.2 Investigation of a *place* which requires disturbance of the *fabric*, apart from that necessary to make decisions, may be appropriate provided that it is consistent with the policy for the place. Such investigation should be based on important research questions which have potential to substantially add to knowledge, which cannot be answered in other ways and which minimises disturbance of significant fabric.

### Article 29. Responsibility

The organisations and individuals responsible for management and decisions should be named and specific responsibility taken for each decision.

### Article 30. Direction, supervision and implementation

Competent direction and supervision should be maintained at all stages, and any changes should be implemented by people with appropriate knowledge and skills.

### Article 31. Keeping a log

*New evidence may come to light while implementing policy or a plan for a place. Other factors may arise and require new decisions. A log of new evidence and additional decisions should be kept.*

### Article 32. Records

32.1 The records associated with the *conservation* of a *place* should be placed in a permanent archive and made publicly available, subject to requirements of security and privacy, and where this is culturally appropriate.

32.2 Records about the history of a *place* should be protected and made publicly available, subject to requirements of security and privacy, and where this is culturally appropriate

### Article 33. Removed fabric

Significant *fabric* which has been removed from a *place* including contents, fixtures and objects, should be catalogued, and protected in accordance with its *cultural significance*.

Where possible and culturally appropriate, removed significant fabric including contents, fixtures and objects, should be kept at the place.

### Article 34. Resources

*Adequate resources should be provided for conservation.*

Words in italics are defined in Article 1

## EXPLANATORY NOTES

New decisions should respect and have minimal impact on the cultural significance of the place.

The best conservation often involves the least work and can be inexpensive.

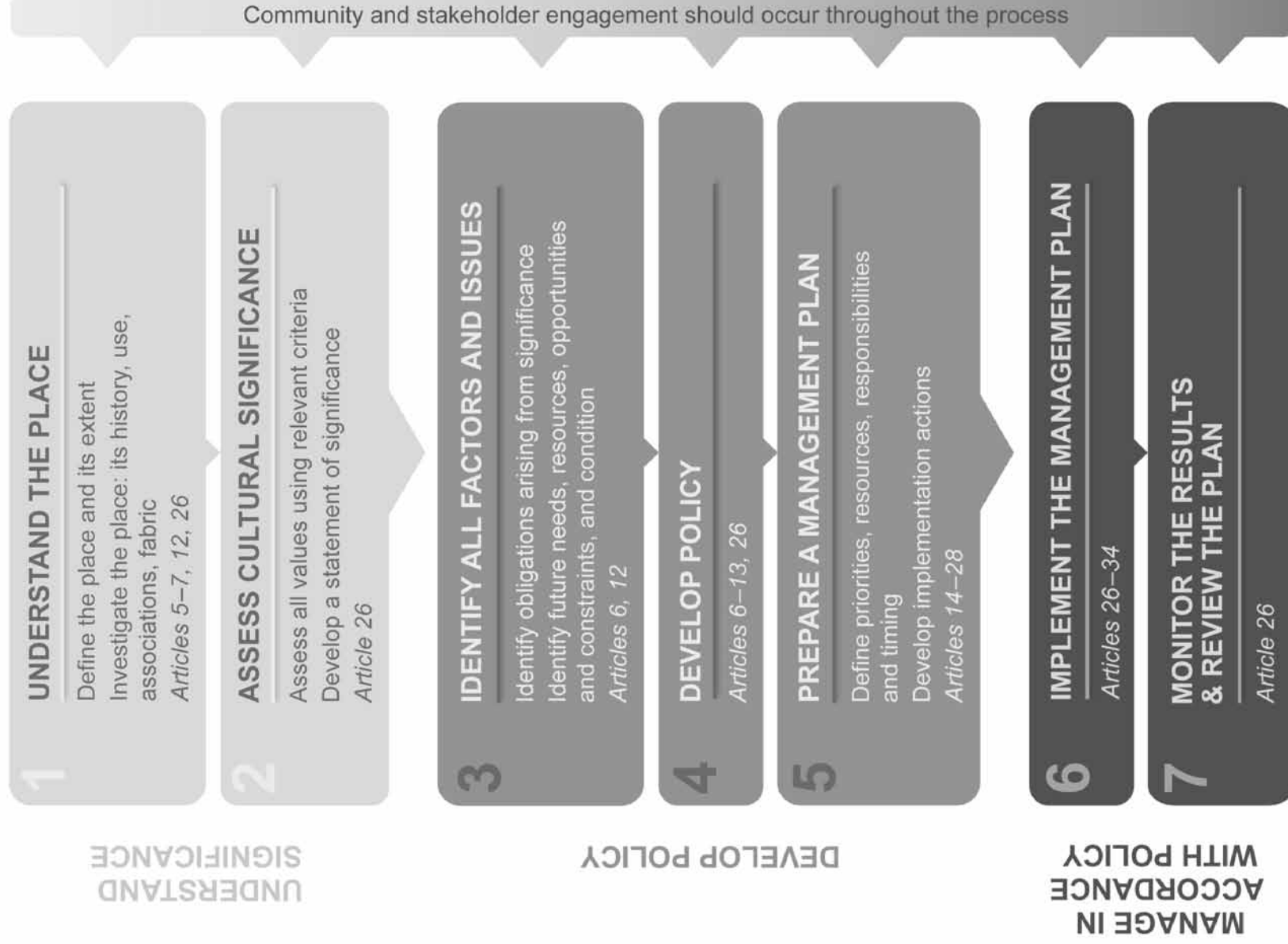
## The Burra Charter Process

Steps in planning for and managing a place of cultural significance

The Burra Charter should be read as a whole.

Key articles relevant to each step are shown in the boxes.

Article 6 summarises the Burra Charter Process.







# HISTORIC GARDENS (THE FLORENCE CHARTER 1981)

Adopted by ICOMOS in December 1982

## PREAMBLE

The ICOMOS-IFLA International Committee for Historic Gardens, meeting in Florence on 21 May 1981, decided to draw up a charter on the preservation of historic gardens which would bear the name of that town. The present Florence Charter was drafted by the Committee and registered by ICOMOS on 15 December 1982 as an addendum to the Venice Charter covering the specific field concerned.

## DEFINITIONS AND OBJECTIVES

### Article 1.

“A historic garden is an architectural and horticultural composition of interest to the public from the historical or artistic point of view”. As such, it is to be considered as a monument.

### Article 2.

“The historic garden is an architectural composition whose constituents are primarily vegetal and therefore living, which means that they are perishable and renewable.” Thus its appearance reflects the perpetual balance between the cycle of the seasons, the growth and decay of nature and the desire of the artist and craftsman to keep it permanently unchanged.

### Article 3.

As a monument, the historic garden must be preserved in accordance with the spirit of the Venice Charter. However, since it is a living monument, its preservation must be governed by specific rules which are the subject of the Present charter.



#### **Article 4.**

The architectural composition of the historic garden includes:

- Its plan and its topography.
- Its vegetation, including its species, proportions, colour schemes, spacing and respective heights.
- Its structural and decorative features.
- Its water, running or still, reflecting the sky.

#### **Article 5.**

As the expression of the direct affinity between civilisation and nature, and as a place of enjoyment suited to meditation or repose, the garden thus acquires the cosmic significance of an idealised image of the world, a “paradise” in the etymological sense of the term, and yet a testimony to a culture, a style, an age, and often to the originality of a creative artist.

#### **Article 6.**

The term “historic garden” is equally applicable to small gardens and to large parks, whether formal or “landscape”.

#### **Article 7.**

Whether or not it is associated with a building in which case it is an inseparable complement, the historic garden cannot be isolated from its own particular environment, whether urban or rural, artificial or natural.

#### **Article 8.**

A historic site is a specific landscape associated with a memorable act, as, for example, a major historic event; a well-known myth; an epic combat; or the subject of a famous picture.

#### **Article 9.**

The preservation of historic gardens depends on their identification and listing. They require several kinds of action, namely maintenance, conservation and restoration. In certain cases, reconstruction may be recommended. The authenticity of a historic garden depends as much on the design and scale of its various parts as on its decorative features and on the choice of plant or inorganic materials adopted for each of its parts.

## **MAINTENANCE, CONSERVATION, RESTORATION, RECONSTRUCTION**

#### **Article 10.**

In any work of maintenance, conservation, restoration or reconstruction of a historic garden, or of any part of it, all its constituent features must be dealt with simultaneously. To isolate the various operations would damage the unity of the whole.

## **MAINTENANCE AND CONSERVATION**

#### **Article 11.**

Continuous maintenance of historic gardens is of paramount importance. Since the principal material is vegetal, the preservation of the garden in an unchanged condition requires both prompt replacements when required and a long-term programme of periodic renewal (clear felling and replanting with mature specimens).

#### **Article 12.**

Those species of trees, shrubs, plants and flowers to be replaced periodically must be selected with regard for established and recognised practice in each botanical and horticultural region, and with the aim to determine the species initially grown and to preserve them.

#### **Article 13.**

The permanent or movable architectural, sculptural or decorative features which form an integral part of the historic garden must be removed or displaced only insofar as this is essential for their conservation or restoration. The replacement or restoration of any such jeopardised features must be effected in accordance with the principles of the Venice Charter, and the date of any complete replacement must be indicated.

#### **Article 14.**

The historic garden must be preserved in appropriate surroundings. Any alteration to the physical environment which will endanger the ecological equilibrium must be prohibited. These applications are applicable to all

aspects of the infrastructure, whether internal or external (drainage works, irrigation systems, roads, car parks, fences, caretaking facilities, visitors' amenities, etc.).

## RESTORATION AND RECONSTRUCTION

### Article 15.

No restoration work and, above all, no reconstruction work on a historic garden shall be undertaken without thorough prior research to ensure that such work is scientifically executed and which will involve everything from excavation to the assembling of records relating to the garden in question and to similar gardens. Before any practical work starts, a project must be prepared on the basis of said research and must be submitted to a group of experts for joint examination and approval.

### Article 16.

Restoration work must respect the successive stages of evolution of the garden concerned. In principle, no one period should be given precedence over any other, except in exceptional cases where the degree of damage or destruction affecting certain parts of a garden may be such that it is decided to reconstruct it on the basis of the traces that survive or of unimpeachable documentary evidence. Such reconstruction work might be undertaken more particularly on the parts of the garden nearest to the building it contains in order to bring out their significance in the design.

### Article 17.

Where a garden has completely disappeared or there exists no more than conjectural evidence of its successive stages a reconstruction could not be considered a historic garden.

## USE

### Article 18.

While any historic garden is designed to be seen and walked about in, access to it must be restricted to the extent demanded by its size and vulnerability, so that its physical fabric and cultural message may be preserved.

### Article 19.

By reason of its nature and purpose, a historic garden is a peaceful place conducive to human contacts, silence and awareness of nature. This conception of its everyday use must contrast with its role on those rare occasions when it accommodates a festivity. Thus, the conditions of such occasional use of a historic garden should be clearly defined, in order that any such festivity may itself serve to enhance the visual effect of the garden instead of perverting or damaging it.

### Article 20.

While historic gardens may be suitable for quiet games as a daily occurrence, separate areas appropriate for active and lively games and sports should also be laid out adjacent to the historic garden, so that the needs of the public may be satisfied in this respect without prejudice to the conservation of the gardens and landscapes.

### Article 21.

The work of maintenance and conservation, the timing of which is determined by season and brief operations which serve to restore the garden's authenticity, must always take precedence over the requirements of public use. All arrangements for visits to historic gardens must be subjected to regulations that ensure the spirit of the place is preserved.

### Article 22.

If a garden is walled, its walls may not be removed without prior examination of all the possible consequences liable to lead to changes in its atmosphere and to affect its preservation.

## LEGAL AND ADMINISTRATIVE PROTECTION

### Article 23.

It is the task of the responsible authorities to adopt, on the advice of qualified experts, the appropriate legal and administrative measures for the identification, listing and protection of historic gardens. The preservation of such gardens must be provided for within the framework of land-use plans and such provision must be duly mentioned in documents relating to



regional and local planning. It is also the task of the responsible authorities to adopt, with the advice of qualified experts, the financial measures which will facilitate the maintenance, conservation and restoration, and, where necessary, the reconstruction of historic gardens.

#### **Article 24.**

The historic garden is one of the features of the patrimony whose survival, by reason of its nature, requires intensive, continuous care by trained experts. Suitable provision should therefore be made for the training of such persons, whether historians, architects, landscape architects, gardeners or botanists. Care should also be taken to ensure that there is regular propagation of the plant varieties necessary for maintenance or restoration.

#### **Article 25.**

Interest in historic gardens should be stimulated by every kind of activity capable of emphasising their true value as part of the patrimony and making for improved knowledge and appreciation of them: promotion of scientific research; international exchange and circulation of information;

publications, including works designed for the general public; the encouragement of public access under suitable control and use of the media to develop awareness of the need for due respect for nature and the historic heritage. The most outstanding of the historic gardens shall be proposed for inclusion in the World Heritage List.

#### **Nota Bene**

The above recommendations are applicable to all the historic gardens in the world.

Additional clauses applicable to specific types of gardens may be subsequently appended to the present Charter with brief descriptions of the said types.

<https://www.icomos.org/en/resources/charters-and-texts>

**GRANADA 1985**





## GRANADA 1985

# CONVENTION FOR THE PROTECTION OF THE ARCHITECTURAL HERITAGE OF EUROPE\*

Council of Europe  
Granada, 3.X.1985

The member States of the Council of Europe, signatory hereto,

Considering that the aim of the Council of Europe is to achieve a greater unity between its members for the purpose, inter alia, of safeguarding and realising the ideals and principles which are their common heritage;

Recognising that the architectural heritage constitutes an irreplaceable expression of the richness and diversity of Europe's cultural heritage, bears inestimable witness to our past and is a common heritage of all Europeans;

Having regard to the European Cultural Convention signed in Paris on 19 December 1954 and in particular to Article 1 thereof;

Having regard to the European Charter of the Architectural Heritage adopted by the Committee of Ministers of the Council of Europe on 26 September 1975 and to Resolution (76) 28, adopted on 14 April 1976, concerning the adaptation of laws and regulations to the requirements of integrated conservation of the architectural heritage;

---

\* The Treaty of Lisbon amending the Treaty on European Union and the Treaty establishing the European Community entered into force on 1 December 2009. As a consequence, as from that date, any reference to the European Economic Community shall be read as the European Union.

Having regard to Recommendation 880 (1979) of the Parliamentary Assembly of the Council of Europe on the conservation of the European architectural heritage;

Having regard to Recommendation No. R (80) 16 of the Committee of Ministers to member States on the specialised training of architects, town planners, civil engineers and landscape designers, and to Recommendation No. R (81) 13 of the Committee of Ministers, adopted on 1 July 1981, on action in aid of certain declining craft trades in the context of the craft activity;

Recalling the importance of handing down to future generations a system of cultural references, improving the urban and rural environment and thereby fostering the economic, social and cultural development of States and regions;

Acknowledging the importance of reaching agreement on the main thrust of a common policy for the conservation and enhancement of the architectural heritage,

Have agreed as follows:

## Definition of the architectural heritage

### Article 1

For the purposes of this Convention, the expression “architectural heritage” shall be considered to comprise the following permanent properties:

- 1 monuments: all buildings and structures of conspicuous historical, archaeological, artistic, scientific, social or technical interest, including their fixtures and fittings;
- 2 groups of buildings: homogeneous groups of urban or rural buildings conspicuous for their historical, archaeological, artistic, scientific, social or technical interest which are sufficiently coherent to form topographically definable units;
- 3 sites: the combined works of man and nature, being areas which are partially built upon and sufficiently distinctive and homogeneous to be topographically definable and are of conspicuous historical, archaeological, artistic, scientific, social or technical interest.

## Identification of properties to be protected

### Article 2

For the purpose of precise identification of the monuments, groups of buildings and sites to be protected, each Party undertakes to maintain inventories and in the event of threats to the properties concerned, to prepare appropriate documentation at the earliest opportunity.

## Statutory protection procedures

### Article 3

Each Party undertakes:

- 1 to take statutory measures to protect the architectural heritage;
- 2 within the framework of such measures and by means specific to each State or region, to make provision for the protection of monuments, groups of buildings and sites.

### Article 4

Each Party undertakes:

- 1 to implement appropriate supervision and authorisation procedures as required by the legal protection of the properties in question;
- 2 to prevent the disfigurement, dilapidation or demolition of protected properties. To this end, each Party undertakes to introduce, if it has not already done so, legislation which:
  - a requires the submission to a competent authority of any scheme for the demolition or alteration of monuments which are already protected, or in respect of which protection proceedings have been instituted, as well as any scheme affecting their surroundings;
  - b requires the submission to a competent authority of any scheme affecting a group of buildings or a part thereof or a site which involves:
    - demolition of buildings,
    - the erection of new buildings,

- substantial alterations which impair the character of the buildings or the site;
- c permits public authorities to require the owner of a protected property to carry out work or to carry out such work itself if the owner fails to do so;
- d allows compulsory purchase of a protected property.

### **Article 5**

Each Party undertakes to prohibit the removal, in whole or in part, of any protected monument, except where the material safeguarding of such monuments makes removal imperative. In these circumstances the competent authority shall take the necessary precautions for its dismantling, transfer and reinstatement at a suitable location.

## **Ancillary measures**

### **Article 6**

Each Party undertakes:

- 1 to provide financial support by the public authorities for maintaining and restoring the architectural heritage on its territory, in accordance with the national, regional and local competence and within the limitations of the budgets available;
- 2 to resort, if necessary, to fiscal measures to facilitate the conservation of this heritage;
- 3 to encourage private initiatives for maintaining and restoring the architectural heritage.

### **Article 7**

In the surroundings of monuments, within groups of buildings and within sites, each Party undertakes to promote measures for the general enhancement of the environment.

### **Article 8**

With a view to limiting the risks of the physical deterioration of the architectural heritage, each Party undertakes:

- 1 to support scientific research for identifying and analysing the harmful effects of pollution and for defining ways and means to reduce or eradicate these effects;
- 2 to take into consideration the special problems of conservation of the architectural heritage in anti-pollution policies.

## **Sanctions**

### **Article 9**

Each Party undertakes to ensure within the power available to it that infringements of the law protecting the architectural heritage are met with a relevant and adequate response by the competent authority. This response may in appropriate circumstances entail an obligation on the offender to demolish a newly erected building which fails to comply with the requirements or to restore a protected property to its former condition.

## **Conservation policies**

### **Article 10**

Each Party undertakes to adopt integrated conservation policies which:

- 1 include the protection of the architectural heritage as an essential town and country planning objective and ensure that this requirement is taken into account at all stages both in the drawing up of development plans and in the procedures for authorising work;
- 2 promote programmes for the restoration and maintenance of the architectural heritage;
- 3 make the conservation, promotion and enhancement of the architectural heritage a major feature of cultural, environmental and planning policies;
- 4 facilitate whenever possible in the town and country planning process the conservation and use of certain buildings whose intrinsic importance would not warrant protection within the meaning of Article 3, paragraph 1, of this Convention but which are of interest from the point of view of their setting in the urban or rural environment and of the quality of life;

- 5 foster, as being essential to the future of the architectural heritage, the application and development of traditional skills and materials.

#### **Article 11**

Due regard being had to the architectural and historical character of the heritage, each Party undertakes to foster:

- the use of protected properties in the light of the needs of contemporary life;
- the adaptation when appropriate of old buildings for new uses.

#### **Article 12**

While recognising the value of permitting public access to protected properties, each Party undertakes to take such action as may be necessary to ensure that the consequences of permitting this access, especially any structural development, do not adversely affect the architectural and historical character of such properties and their surroundings.

#### **Article 13**

In order to facilitate the implementation of these policies, each Party undertakes to foster, within its own political and administrative structure, effective co-operation at all levels between conservation, cultural, environmental and planning activities.

## **Participation and associations**

#### **Article 14**

With a view to widening the impact of public authority measures for the identification, protection, restoration, maintenance, management and promotion of the architectural heritage, each Party undertakes:

- 1 to establish in the various stages of the decision-making process, appropriate machinery for the supply of information, consultation and co-operation between the State, the regional and local authorities, cultural institutions and associations, and the public;
- 2 to foster the development of sponsorship and of non-profit-making associations working in this field.

## **Information and training**

#### **Article 15**

Each Party undertakes:

- 1 to develop public awareness of the value of conserving the architectural heritage, both as an element of cultural identity and as a source of inspiration and creativity for present and future generations;
- 2 to this end, to promote policies for disseminating information and fostering increased awareness, especially by the use of modern communication and promotion techniques, aimed in particular:
  - a at awakening or increasing public interest, as from school-age, in the protection of the heritage, the quality of the built environment and architecture;
  - b at demonstrating the unity of the cultural heritage and the links that exist between architecture, the arts, popular traditions and ways of life at European, national and regional levels alike.

#### **Article 16**

Each Party undertakes to promote training in the various occupations and craft trades involved in the conservation of the architectural heritage.

## **European co-ordination of conservation policies**

#### **Article 17**

The Parties undertake to exchange information on their conservation policies concerning such matters as:

- 1 the methods to be adopted for the survey, protection and conservation of properties having regard to historic developments and to any increase in the number of properties concerned;
- 2 the ways in which the need to protect the architectural heritage can best be reconciled with the needs of contemporary economic, social and cultural activities;
- 3 the possibilities afforded by new technologies for identifying and recording the architectural heritage and combating the deterioration

of materials as well as in the fields of scientific research, restoration work and methods of managing and promoting the heritage;

- 4 ways of promoting architectural creation as our age's contribution to the European heritage.

#### **Article 18**

The Parties undertake to afford, whenever necessary, mutual technical assistance in the form of exchanges of experience and of experts in the conservation of the architectural heritage.

#### **Article 19**

The Parties undertake, within the framework of the relevant national legislation, or the international agreements, to encourage European exchanges of specialists in the conservation of the architectural heritage, including those responsible for further training.

#### **Article 20**

For the purposes of this Convention, a Committee of Experts set up by the Committee of Ministers of the Council of Europe pursuant to Article 17 of the Statute of the Council of Europe shall monitor the application of the Convention and in particular:

- 1 report periodically to the Committee of Ministers of the Council of Europe on the situation of architectural heritage conservation policies in the States Parties to the Convention, on the implementation of the principles embodied in the Convention and on its own activities;
- 2 propose to the Committee of Ministers of the Council of Europe measures for the implementation of the Convention's provisions, such measures being deemed to include multilateral activities, revision or amendment of the Convention and public information about the purpose of the Convention;
- 3 make recommendations to the Committee of Ministers of the Council of Europe regarding invitations to States which are not members of the Council of Europe to accede to this Convention.

#### **Article 21**

The provisions of this Convention shall not prejudice the application of such specific more favourable provisions concerning the protection of the properties described in Article 1 as are embodied in:

- the Convention for the Protection of World Cultural and Natural Heritage of 16 November 1972;
- the European Convention on the Protection of the Archaeological Heritage of 6 May 1969.

## **Final clauses**

#### **Article 22**

- 1 This Convention shall be open for signature by the member States of the Council of Europe. It is subject to ratification, acceptance or approval. Instruments of ratification, acceptance or approval shall be deposited with the Secretary General of the Council of Europe.
- 2 This Convention shall enter into force on the first day of the month following the expiration of a period of three months after the date on which three member States of the Council of Europe have expressed their consent to be bound by the Convention in accordance with the provisions of the preceding paragraph.
- 3 In respect of any member State which subsequently expresses its consent to be bound by it, the Convention shall enter into force on the first day of the month following the expiration of a period of three months after the date of the deposit of the instrument of ratification, acceptance or approval.

#### **Article 23**

- 1 After the entry into force of this Convention, the Committee of Ministers of the Council of Europe may invite any State not a member of the Council and the European Economic Community to accede to this Convention by a decision taken by the majority provided for in Article 20.d of the Statute of the Council of Europe and by the unanimous vote of the representatives of the Contracting States entitled to sit on the Committee.
- 2 In respect of any acceding State or, should it accede, the European Economic Community, the Convention shall enter into force on the first day of the month following the expiration of a period of three months after the date of deposit of the instrument of accession with the Secretary General of the Council of Europe.



#### **Article 24**

- 1 Any State may, at the time of signature or when depositing its instrument of ratification, acceptance, approval or accession, specify the territory or territories to which this Convention shall apply.
- 2 Any State may at any later date, by a declaration addressed to the Secretary General of the Council of Europe, extend the application of this Convention to any other territory specified in the declaration. In respect of such territory the Convention shall enter into force on the first day of the month following the expiration of a period of three months after the date of receipt of such declaration by the Secretary General.
- 3 Any declaration made under the two preceding paragraphs may, in respect of any territory specified in such declaration, be withdrawn by a notification addressed to the Secretary General. The withdrawal shall become effective on the first day of the month following the expiration of a period of six months after the date of receipt of such notification by the Secretary General.

#### **Article 25**

- 1 Any State may, at the time of signature or when depositing its instrument of ratification, acceptance, approval or accession, declare that it reserves the right not to comply, in whole or in part, with the provisions of Article 4, paragraphs c and d. No other reservations may be made.
- 2 Any Contracting State which has made a reservation under the preceding paragraph may wholly or partly withdraw it by means of a notification addressed to the Secretary General of the Council of Europe. The withdrawal shall take effect on the date of receipt of such notification by the Secretary General.
- 3 A Party which has made a reservation in respect of the provisions mentioned in paragraph 1 above may not claim the application of that provision by any other Party; it may, however, if its reservation is partial or conditional, claim the application of that provision in so far as it has itself accepted it.

#### **Article 26**

- 1 Any Party may at any time denounce this Convention by means of a notification addressed to the Secretary General of the Council of Europe.
- 2 Such denunciation shall become effective on the first day of the month following the expiration of a period of six months after the date of receipt of such notification by the Secretary General.

#### **Article 27**

The Secretary General of the Council of Europe shall notify the member States of the Council of Europe, any State which has acceded to this Convention and the European Economic Community if it has acceded, of:

- any signature;
- the deposit of any instrument of ratification, acceptance, approval or accession;
- any date of entry into force of this Convention in accordance with Articles 22, 23 and 24;
- any other act, notification or communication relating to this Convention.

In witness whereof the undersigned, being duly authorised thereto, have signed this Convention.

Done at Granada, this 3rd day of October 1985, in English and French, both texts being equally authentic, in a single copy which shall be deposited in the archives of the Council of Europe. The Secretary General of the Council of Europe shall transmit certified copies to each member State of the Council of Europe and to any State or to the European Economic Community invited to accede to this Convention.

<https://www.coe.int/en/web/conventions/full-list/-/conventions/treaty/121>







**WASHINGTON 1987**

## **CHARTER FOR THE CONSERVATION OF HISTORIC TOWNS AND URBAN AREAS (Washington Charter 1987)**

Adopted by ICOMOS General Assembly in Washington, DC, October 1987.

### **PREAMBLE AND DEFINITIONS**

All urban communities, whether they have developed gradually over time or have been created deliberately, are an expression of the diversity of societies throughout history.

This charter concerns historic urban areas, large and small, including cities, towns and historic centres or quarters, together with their natural and man-made environments. Beyond their role as historical documents, these areas embody the values of traditional urban cultures. Today many such areas are being threatened, physically degraded, damaged or even destroyed, by the impact of the urban development that follows industrialisation in societies everywhere.

Faced with this dramatic situation, which often leads to irreversible cultural, social and even economic losses, the International Council on Monuments and Sites (ICOMOS) deems it necessary to draw up an international charter for historic towns and urban areas that will complement the “International Charter for the Conservation and Restoration of Monuments and Sites,” usually referred to as “The Venice Charter.” This new text defines the principles, objectives, and methods necessary for the conservation of historic towns and urban areas. It also seeks to promote the harmony of both private and community life in these areas and to encourage the preservation of those cultural properties, however modest in scale, that constitute the memory of mankind.

As set out in the UNESCO “Recommendation Concerning the Safeguarding and Contemporary Role of Historic Areas” (Warsaw–Nairobi, 1976), and also in various other international instruments, “the conservation of historic towns and urban areas” is understood to mean those steps necessary for the protection, conservation and restoration of such towns and areas as well as their development and harmonious adaptation to contemporary life.

## PRINCIPLES AND OBJECTIVES

1. In order to be most effective, the conservation of historic towns and other historic urban areas should be an integral part of coherent policies of economic and social development and of urban and regional planning at every level.
2. Qualities to be preserved include the historic character of the town or urban area and all those material and spiritual elements that express this character, especially:
  - a) Urban patterns as defined by lots and streets;
  - b) Relationships between buildings and green and open spaces;
  - c) The formal appearance, interior and exterior, of buildings as defined by scale, size, style, construction, materials, colour and decoration;
  - d) The relationship between the town or urban area and its surrounding setting, both natural and man-made; and
  - e) The various functions that the town or urban area has acquired over time.

Any threat to these qualities would compromise the authenticity of the historic town or urban area.

3. The participation and the involvement of the residents are essential for the success of the conservation programme and should be encouraged. The conservation of historic towns and urban areas concerns their residents first of all.
4. Conservation in a historic town or urban area demands prudence, a systematic approach and discipline. Rigidity should be avoided since individual cases may present specific problems.

## METHODS AND INSTRUMENTS

5. Planning for the conservation of historic towns and urban areas should be preceded by multidisciplinary studies.  
Conservation plans must address all relevant factors including archaeology, history, architecture, techniques, sociology and economics.

The principal objectives of the conservation plan should be clearly stated as should the legal, administrative and financial measures necessary to attain them.

The conservation plan should aim at ensuring a harmonious relationship between the historic urban areas and the town as a whole.

The conservation plan should determine which buildings must be preserved, which should be preserved under certain circumstances and which, under quite exceptional circumstances, might be expendable.

Before any intervention, existing conditions in the area should be thoroughly documented.

The conservation plan should be supported by the residents of the historic area.

6. Until a conservation plan has been adopted, any necessary conservation activity should be carried out in accordance with the principles and the aims of this Charter and the Venice Charter.
7. Continuing maintenance is crucial to the effective conservation of a historic town or urban area.
8. New functions and activities should be compatible with the character of the historic town or urban area. Adaptation of these areas to contemporary life requires the careful installation or improvement of public service facilities.
9. The improvement of housing should be one of the basic objectives of conservation.
10. When it is necessary to construct new buildings or adapt existing ones, the existing spatial layout should be respected, especially in terms of scale and lot size. The introduction of contemporary elements in harmony with the surroundings should not be discouraged since such features can contribute to the enrichment of an area.
11. Knowledge of the history of a historic town or urban area should be expanded through archaeological investigation and appropriate preservation of archaeological findings.
12. Traffic inside a historic town or urban area must be controlled and parking areas must be planned so that they do not damage the historic fabric or its environment.

13. When urban or regional planning provides for the construction of major motorways, they must not penetrate a historic town or urban area, but they should improve access to them.
14. Historic towns should be protected against natural disasters and nuisances such as pollution and vibrations in order to safeguard the heritage and for the security and wellbeing of the residents. Whatever the nature of a disaster affecting a historic town or urban area, preventative and repair measures must be adapted to the specific character of the properties concerned.
15. In order to encourage their participation and involvement, a general information programme should be set up for all residents, beginning with children of school age.
16. Specialised training should be provided for all those professions concerned with conservation.

<https://www.icomos.org/en/what-we-do/focus/179-articlesen-francais/ressources/charters-and-standards/159-charter-for-the-conservation-of-historic-towns-and-urban-areas>











**LAUSANNE 1990**

## **CHARTER FOR THE PROTECTION AND MANAGEMENT OF THE ARCHAEOLOGICAL HERITAGE (1990)**

Prepared by the International Committee for the Management of Archaeological Heritage (ICAHM) and approved by the 9th General Assembly in Lausanne in 1990.

### **INTRODUCTION**

It is widely recognised that a knowledge and understanding of the origins and development of human societies is of fundamental importance to humanity in identifying its cultural and social roots.

The archaeological heritage constitutes the basic record of past human activities. Its protection and proper management is therefore essential to enable archaeologists and other scholars to study and interpret it on behalf of and for the benefit of present and future generations.

The protection of this heritage cannot be based upon the application of archaeological techniques alone. It requires a wider basis of professional and scientific knowledge and skills. Some elements of the archaeological heritage are components of architectural structures and in such cases must be protected in accordance with the criteria for the protection of such structures laid down in the 1966 Venice Charter on the Conservation and Restoration of Monuments and Sites. Other elements of the archaeological heritage constitute part of the living traditions of indigenous peoples, and for such sites and monuments the participation of local cultural groups is essential for their protection and preservation.

For these and other reasons the protection of the archaeological heritage must be based upon effective collaboration between professionals from many disciplines. It also requires the co-operation of government authorities, academic researchers, private or public enterprise, and the general public. This charter therefore lays down principles relating to the different aspects of archaeological heritage management. These include the responsibilities of public authorities and legislators, principles relating to the professional performance of the processes of inventories, survey, excavation, documentation, research, maintenance, conservation,

preservation, reconstruction, information, presentation, public access and use of the heritage, and the qualification of professionals involved in the protection of the archaeological heritage.

The charter has been inspired by the success of the Venice Charter as guidelines and source of ideas for policies and practice of governments as well as scholars and professionals.

The charter has to reflect very basic principles and guidelines with global validity. For this reason it cannot take into account the specific problems and possibilities of regions or countries. The charter should therefore be supplemented at regional and national levels by further principles and guidelines for these needs.

## DEFINITION AND INTRODUCTION

### Article 1

The “archaeological heritage” is that part of the material heritage in respect of which archaeological methods provide primary information. It comprises all vestiges of human existence and consists of places relating to all manifestations of human activity, abandoned structures, and remains of all kinds (including subterranean and underwater sites), together with all the portable cultural material associated with them.

## INTEGRATED PROTECTION POLICIES

### Article 2.

The archaeological heritage is a fragile and non-renewable cultural resource. Land use must therefore be controlled and developed in order to minimise the destruction of the archaeological heritage.

Policies for the protection of the archaeological heritage should constitute an integral component of policies relating to land use, development, and planning as well as of cultural, environmental and educational policies. The policies for the protection of the archaeological heritage should be kept under continual review, so that they stay up to date. The creation of archaeological reserves should form part of such policies.

The protection of the archaeological heritage should be integrated into planning policies at international, national, regional and local levels.

Active participation by the general public must form part of policies for the protection of the archaeological heritage. This is essential where the heritage of indigenous peoples is involved. Participation must be based upon access to the knowledge necessary for decision-making. The provision of information to the general public is therefore an important element in integrated protection.

## LEGISLATION AND ECONOMY

### Article 3.

The protection of the archaeological heritage should be considered as a moral obligation upon all human beings; it is also a collective public responsibility. This obligation must be acknowledged through relevant legislation and the provision of adequate funds for the supporting programmes necessary for effective heritage management.

The archaeological heritage is common to all human society and it should therefore be the duty of every country to ensure that adequate funds are available for its protection.

Legislation should afford protection to the archaeological heritage that is appropriate to the needs, history, and traditions of each country and region, providing for in situ protection and research needs.

Legislation should be based on the concept of the archaeological heritage as the heritage of all humanity and of groups of peoples, and not restricted to any individual person or nation.

Legislation should forbid the destruction, degradation or alteration through changes of any archaeological site or monument or to their surroundings without the consent of the relevant archaeological authority.

Legislation should in principle require full archaeological investigation and documentation in cases where the destruction of the archaeological heritage is authorised.

Legislation should require, and make provision for, the proper maintenance, management and conservation of the archaeological heritage. Adequate legal sanctions should be prescribed in respect of violations of archaeological heritage legislation.

If legislation affords protection only to those elements of the archaeological heritage which are registered in a selective statutory inventory, provision should be made for the temporary protection of unprotected or newly discovered sites and monuments until an archaeological evaluation can be carried out.

Development projects constitute one of the greatest physical threats to the archaeological heritage. A duty for developers to ensure that archaeological heritage impact studies are carried out before development schemes are implemented, should therefore be embodied in appropriate legislation, with a stipulation that the costs of such studies are to be included in project costs. The principle should also be established in legislation that development schemes should be designed in such a way as to minimise their impact upon the archaeological heritage.

## SURVEY

### Article 4.

The protection of the archaeological heritage must be based upon the fullest possible knowledge of its extent and nature. General survey of archaeological resources is therefore an essential working tool in developing strategies for the protection of the archaeological heritage. Consequently archaeological survey should be a basic obligation in the protection and management of the archaeological heritage.

At the same time, inventories constitute primary resource databases for scientific study and research. The compilation of inventories should therefore be regarded as a continuous, dynamic process. It follows that inventories should comprise information at various levels of significance and reliability, since even superficial knowledge can form the starting point for protectional measures.

## INVESTIGATION

### Article 5.

Archaeological knowledge is based principally on the scientific investigation of the archaeological heritage. Such investigation embraces the whole range of methods from non-destructive techniques through sampling to total excavation.

It must be an overriding principle that the gathering of information about the archaeological heritage should not destroy any more archaeological evidence than is necessary for the protectional or scientific objectives of the investigation. Non-destructive techniques, aerial and ground survey, and sampling should therefore be encouraged wherever possible, in preference to total excavation.

As excavation always implies the necessity of making a selection of evidence to be documented and preserved at the cost of losing other information and possibly even the total destruction of the monument, a decision to excavate should only be taken after thorough consideration.

Excavation should be carried out on sites and monuments threatened by development, land-use change, looting, or natural deterioration.

In exceptional cases, unthreatened sites may be excavated to elucidate research problems or to interpret them more effectively for the purpose of presenting them to the public. In such cases excavation must be preceded by thorough scientific evaluation of the significance of the site. Excavation should be partial, leaving a portion undisturbed for future research.

A report conforming to an agreed standard should be made available to the scientific community and should be incorporated in the relevant inventory within a reasonable period after the conclusion of the excavation.

Excavations should be conducted in accordance with the principles embodied in the 1956 UNESCO Recommendations on International Principles Applicable to Archaeological Excavations and with agreed international and national professional standards.

## MAINTENANCE AND CONSERVATION

### Article 6.

The overall objective of archaeological heritage management should be the preservation of monuments and sites in situ, including proper long-term conservation and curation of all related records and collections etc. Any transfer of elements of the heritage to new locations represents a violation of the principle of preserving the heritage in its original context. This principle stresses the need for proper maintenance, conservation and management. It also asserts the principle that the archaeological

heritage should not be exposed by excavation or left exposed after excavation if provision for its proper maintenance and management after excavation cannot be guaranteed.

Local commitment and participation should be actively sought and encouraged as a means of promoting the maintenance of the archaeological heritage. This principle is especially important when dealing with the heritage of indigenous peoples or local cultural groups. In some cases it may be appropriate to entrust responsibility for the protection and management of sites and monuments to indigenous peoples.

Owing to the inevitable limitations of available resources, active maintenance will have to be carried out on a selective basis. It should therefore be applied to a sample of the diversity of sites and monuments, based upon a scientific assessment of their significance and representative character, and not confined to the more notable and visually attractive monuments.

The relevant principles of the 1956 UNESCO Recommendations should be applied in respect of the maintenance and conservation of the archaeological heritage.

## PRESENTATION, INFORMATION, RECONSTRUCTION

### Article 7.

The presentation of the archaeological heritage to the general public is an essential method of promoting an understanding of the origins and development of modern societies. At the same time it is the most important means of promoting an understanding of the need for its protection.

Presentation and information should be conceived as a popular interpretation of the current state of knowledge, and it must therefore be revised frequently. It should take account of the multifaceted approaches to an understanding of the past.

Reconstructions serve two important functions: experimental research and interpretation. They should, however, be carried out with great caution, so as to avoid disturbing any surviving archaeological evidence, and they should take account of evidence from all sources in order to achieve authenticity. Where possible and appropriate, reconstructions

should not be built immediately on the archaeological remains, and should be identifiable as such.

## PROFESSIONAL QUALIFICATIONS

### Article 8.

High academic standards in many different disciplines are essential in the management of the archaeological heritage. The training of an adequate number of qualified professionals in the relevant fields of expertise should therefore be an important objective for the educational policies in every country. The need to develop expertise in certain highly specialised fields calls for international co-operation. Standards of professional training and professional conduct should be established and maintained.

The objective of academic archaeological training should take account of the shift in conservation policies from excavation to in situ preservation. It should also take into account the fact that the study of the history of indigenous peoples is as important in preserving and understanding the archaeological heritage as the study of outstanding monuments and sites.

The protection of the archaeological heritage is a process of continuous dynamic development. Time should therefore be made available to professionals working in this field to enable them to update their knowledge. Postgraduate training programmes should be developed with special emphasis on the protection and management of the archaeological heritage.

## INTERNATIONAL CO-OPERATION

### Article 9.

The archaeological heritage is the common heritage of all humanity. International co-operation is therefore essential in developing and maintaining standards in its management.

There is an urgent need to create international mechanisms for the exchange of information and experience among professionals dealing with archaeological heritage management. This requires the organisation of conferences, seminars, workshops, etc. at global as well as regional

levels, and the establishment of regional centres for postgraduate studies. ICOMOS, through its specialised groups, should promote this aspect in its medium- and long-term planning.

International exchanges of professional staff should also be developed as a means of raising standards of archaeological heritage management.

Technical assistance programmes in the field of archaeological heritage management should be developed under the auspices of ICOMOS.

<https://www.icomos.org/en/practical-information/179-articles-en-francais/ressources/charters-and-standards/160-charter-for-the-protection-and-management-of-the-archaeological-heritage>











**VALLETTA 1992**

## **EUROPEAN CONVENTION ON THE PROTECTION OF THE ARCHAEOLOGICAL HERITAGE (REVISED)\***

Council of Europe, Valetta, 16.I.1992

### **PREAMBLE**

The member States of the Council of Europe and the other States party to the European Cultural Convention signatory hereto,

Considering that the aim of the Council of Europe is to achieve a greater unity between its members for the purpose, in particular, of safeguarding and realising the ideals and principles which are their common heritage;

Having regard to the European Cultural Convention signed in Paris on 19 December 1954, in particular Articles 1 and 5 thereof;

Having regard to the Convention for the Protection of the Architectural Heritage of Europe signed in Granada on 3 October 1985;

Having regard to the European Convention on Offences relating to Cultural Property signed in Delphi on 23 June 1985;

Having regard to the recommendations of the Parliamentary Assembly relating to archaeology and in particular Recommendations 848 (1978), 921 (1981) and 1072 (1988);

Having regard to Recommendation No. R (89) 5 concerning the protection and enhancement of the archaeological heritage in the context of town and country planning operations;

---

\* The Treaty of Lisbon amending the Treaty on European Union and the Treaty establishing the European Community entered into force on 1 December 2009. As a consequence, as from that date, any reference to the European Economic Community shall be read as the European Union.

Recalling that the archaeological heritage is essential to a knowledge of the history of mankind;

Acknowledging that the European archaeological heritage, which provides evidence of ancient history, is seriously threatened with deterioration because of the increasing number of major planning schemes, natural risks, clandestine or unscientific excavations and insufficient public awareness;

Affirming that it is important to institute, where they do not yet exist, appropriate administrative and scientific supervision procedures, and that the need to protect the archaeological heritage should be reflected in town and country planning and cultural development policies;

Stressing that responsibility for the protection of the archaeological heritage should rest not only with the State directly concerned but with all European countries, the aim being to reduce the risk of deterioration and promote conservation by encouraging exchanges of experts and the comparison of experiences;

Noting the necessity to complete the principles set forth in the European Convention for the Protection of the Archaeological Heritage signed in London on 6 May 1969, as a result of evolution of planning policies in European countries,

Have agreed as follows:

## Definition of the archaeological heritage

### Article 1

- 1 The aim of this (revised) Convention is to protect the archaeological heritage as a source of the European collective memory and as an instrument for historical and scientific study.
- 2 To this end shall be considered to be elements of the archaeological heritage all remains and objects and any other traces of mankind from past epochs:
  - i. the preservation and study of which help to retrace the history of mankind and its relation with the natural environment;

- ii. for which excavations or discoveries and other methods of research into mankind and the related environment are the main sources of information; and

- iii. which are located in any area within the jurisdiction of the Parties.

- 3 The archaeological heritage shall include structures, constructions, groups of buildings, developed sites, moveable objects, monuments of other kinds as well as their context, whether situated on land or under water.

## Identification of the heritage and measures for protection

### Article 2

Each Party undertakes to institute, by means appropriate to the State in question, a legal system for the protection of the archaeological heritage, making provision for:

- i. the maintenance of an inventory of its archaeological heritage and the designation of protected monuments and areas;
- ii. the creation of archaeological reserves, even where there are no visible remains on the ground or under water, for the preservation of material evidence to be studied by later generations;
- iii. the mandatory reporting to the competent authorities by a finder of the chance discovery of elements of the archaeological heritage and making them available for examination.

### Article 3

To preserve the archaeological heritage and guarantee the scientific significance of archaeological research work, each Party undertakes:

- i. to apply procedures for the authorisation and supervision of excavation and other archaeological activities in such a way as:
  - a to prevent any illicit excavation or removal of elements of the archaeological heritage;
  - b to ensure that archaeological excavations and prospecting are undertaken in a scientific manner and provided that:
    - non-destructive methods of investigation are applied wherever possible;

- the elements of the archaeological heritage are not uncovered or left exposed during or after excavation without provision being made for their proper preservation, conservation and management;
- ii. to ensure that excavations and other potentially destructive techniques are carried out only by qualified, specially authorised persons;
- iii. to subject to specific prior authorisation, whenever foreseen by the domestic law of the State, the use of metal detectors and any other detection equipment or process for archaeological investigation.

#### **Article 4**

Each Party undertakes to implement measures for the physical protection of the archaeological heritage, making provision, as circumstances demand:

- i. for the acquisition or protection by other appropriate means by the authorities of areas intended to constitute archaeological reserves;
- ii. for the conservation and maintenance of the archaeological heritage, preferably *in situ*;
- iii. for appropriate storage places for archaeological remains which have been removed from their original location.

### **Integrated conservation of the archaeological heritage**

#### **Article 5**

Each Party undertakes:

- i. to seek to reconcile and combine the respective requirements of archaeology and development plans by ensuring that archaeologists participate:
  - a in planning policies designed to ensure well-balanced strategies for the protection, conservation and enhancement of sites of archaeological interest;
  - b in the various stages of development schemes;

- ii. to ensure that archaeologists, town and regional planners systematically consult one another in order to permit:
  - a the modification of development plans likely to have adverse effects on the archaeological heritage;
  - b the allocation of sufficient time and resources for an appropriate scientific study to be made of the site and for its findings to be published;
- iii. to ensure that environmental impact assessments and the resulting decisions involve full consideration of archaeological sites and their settings;
- iv. to make provision, when elements of the archaeological heritage have been found during development work, for their conservation *in situ* when feasible;
- v. to ensure that the opening of archaeological sites to the public, especially any structural arrangements necessary for the reception of large numbers of visitors, does not adversely affect the archaeological and scientific character of such sites and their surroundings.

### **Financing of archaeological research and conservation**

#### **Article 6**

Each Party undertakes:

- i. to arrange for public financial support for archaeological research from national, regional and local authorities in accordance with their respective competence;
- ii. to increase the material resources for rescue archaeology:
  - a by taking suitable measures to ensure that provision is made in major public or private development schemes for covering, from public sector or private sector resources, as appropriate, the total costs of any necessary related archaeological operations;
  - b by making provision in the budget relating to these schemes in the same way as for the impact studies necessitated by environmental and regional planning precautions,

for preliminary archaeological study and prospection, for a scientific summary record as well as for the full publication and recording of the findings.

## Collection and dissemination of scientific information

### Article 7

For the purpose of facilitating the study of, and dissemination of knowledge about, archaeological discoveries, each Party undertakes:

- i. to make or bring up to date surveys, inventories and maps of archaeological sites in the areas within its jurisdiction;
- ii. to take all practical measures to ensure the drafting, following archaeological operations, of a publishable scientific summary record before the necessary comprehensive publication of specialised studies.

### Article 8

Each Party undertakes:

- i. to facilitate the national and international exchange of elements of the archaeological heritage for professional scientific purposes while taking appropriate steps to ensure that such circulation in no way prejudices the cultural and scientific value of those elements;
- ii. to promote the pooling of information on archaeological research and excavations in progress and to contribute to the organisation of international research programmes.

## Promotion of public awareness

### Article 9

Each Party undertakes:

- i. to conduct educational actions with a view to rousing and developing an awareness in public opinion of the value of the archaeological heritage for understanding the past and of the threats to this heritage;

- ii. to promote public access to important elements of its archaeological heritage, especially sites, and encourage the display to the public of suitable selections of archaeological objects.

## Prevention of the illicit circulation of elements of the archaeological heritage

### Article 10

Each Party undertakes:

- i. to arrange for the relevant public authorities and for scientific institutions to pool information on any illicit excavations identified;
- ii. to inform the competent authorities in the State of origin which is a Party to this Convention of any offer suspected of coming either from illicit excavations or unlawfully from official excavations, and to provide the necessary details thereof;
- iii. to take such steps as are necessary to ensure that museums and similar institutions whose acquisition policy is under State control do not acquire elements of the archaeological heritage suspected of coming from uncontrolled finds or illicit excavations or unlawfully from official excavations;
- iv. as regards museums and similar institutions located in the territory of a Party but the acquisition policy of which is not under State control:
  - a to convey to them the text of this (revised) Convention;
  - b to spare no effort to ensure respect by the said museums and institutions for the principles set out in paragraph 3 above;
- v. to restrict, as far as possible, by education, information, vigilance and co-operation, the transfer of elements of the archaeological heritage obtained from uncontrolled finds or illicit excavations or unlawfully from official excavations.

### Article 11

Nothing in this (revised) Convention shall affect existing or future bilateral or multilateral treaties between Parties, concerning the illicit circulation of elements of the archaeological heritage or their restitution to the rightful owner.

## Mutual technical and scientific assistance

### Article 12

The Parties undertake:

- i. to afford mutual technical and scientific assistance through the pooling of experience and exchanges of experts in matters concerning the archaeological heritage;
- ii. to encourage, under the relevant national legislation or international agreements binding them, exchanges of specialists in the preservation of the archaeological heritage, including those responsible for further training.

## Control of the application of the (revised) Convention

### Article 13

For the purposes of this (revised) Convention, a committee of experts, set up by the Committee of Ministers of the Council of Europe pursuant to Article 17 of the Statute of the Council of Europe, shall monitor the application of the (revised) Convention and in particular:

- i. report periodically to the Committee of Ministers of the Council of Europe on the situation of archaeological heritage protection policies in the States Parties to the (revised) Convention and on the implementation of the principles embodied in the (revised) Convention;
- ii. propose measures to the Committee of Ministers of the Council of Europe for the implementation of the (revised) Convention's provisions, including multilateral activities, revision or amendment of the (revised) Convention and informing public opinion about the purpose of the (revised) Convention;
- iii. make recommendations to the Committee of Ministers of the Council of Europe regarding invitations to States which are not members of the Council of Europe to accede to this (revised) Convention.

## Final clauses

### Article 14

1 This (revised) Convention shall be open for signature by the member States of the Council of Europe and the other States party to the European Cultural Convention.

It is subject to ratification, acceptance or approval. Instruments of ratification, acceptance or approval shall be deposited with the Secretary General of the Council of Europe.

2 No State party to the European Convention on the Protection of the Archaeological Heritage, signed in London on 6 May 1969, may deposit its instrument of ratification, acceptance or approval unless it has already denounced the said Convention or denounces it simultaneously.

3 This (revised) Convention shall enter into force six months after the date on which four States, including at least three member States of the Council of Europe, have expressed their consent to be bound by the (revised) Convention in accordance with the provisions of the preceding paragraphs.

4 Whenever, in application of the preceding two paragraphs, the denunciation of the Convention of 6 May 1969 would not become effective simultaneously with the entry into force of this (revised) Convention, a Contracting State may, when depositing its instrument of ratification, acceptance or approval, declare that it will continue to apply the Convention of 6 May 1969 until the entry into force of this (revised) Convention.

5 In respect of any signatory State which subsequently expresses its consent to be bound by it, the (revised) Convention shall enter into force six months after the date of the deposit of the instrument of ratification, acceptance or approval.

### Article 15

1 After the entry into force of this (revised) Convention, the Committee of Ministers of the Council of Europe may invite any other State not a member of the Council and the European Economic Community,

to accede to this (revised) Convention by a decision taken by the majority provided for in Article 20.d of the Statute of the Council of Europe and by the unanimous vote of the representatives of the Contracting States entitled to sit on the Committee.

- 2 In respect of any acceding State or, should it accede, the European Economic Community, the (revised) Convention shall enter into force six months after the date of deposit of the instrument of accession with the Secretary General of the Council of Europe.

#### **Article 16**

- 1 Any State may, at the time of signature or when depositing its instrument of ratification, acceptance, approval or accession, specify the territory or territories to which this (revised) Convention shall apply.
- 2 Any State may at any later date, by a declaration addressed to the Secretary General of the Council of Europe, extend the application of this (revised) Convention to any other territory specified in the declaration. In respect of such territory the (revised) Convention shall enter into force six months after the date of receipt of such declaration by the Secretary General.
- 3 Any declaration made under the two preceding paragraphs may, in respect of any territory specified in such declaration, be withdrawn by a notification addressed to the Secretary General. The withdrawal shall become effective six months after the date of receipt of such notification by the Secretary General.

#### **Article 17**

- 1 Any Party may at any time denounce this (revised) Convention by means of a notification addressed to the Secretary General of the Council of Europe.
- 2 Such denunciation shall become effective six months following the date of receipt of such notification by the Secretary General.

#### **Article 18**

The Secretary General of the Council of Europe shall notify the member States of the Council of Europe, the other States party to the European

Cultural Convention and any State or the European Economic Community which has acceded or has been invited to accede to this (revised) Convention of:

- i. any signature;
- ii. the deposit of any instrument of ratification, acceptance, approval or accession;
- iii. any date of entry into force of this (revised) Convention in accordance with Articles 14, 15 and 16;
- iv. any other act, notification or communication relating to this (revised) Convention.

In witness whereof the undersigned, being duly authorised thereto, have signed this revised Convention.

Done at Valletta, this 16th day of January 1992, in English and French, both texts being equally authentic, in a single copy which shall be deposited in the archives of the Council of Europe. The Secretary General of the Council of Europe shall transmit certified copies to each member State of the Council of Europe, to the other States party to the European Cultural Convention, and to any non-member State or the European Economic Community invited to accede to this (revised) Convention.

<https://www.coe.int/en/web/conventions/full-list/-/conventions/rms/090000168007bd25>









**NARA 1994**

## **THE NARA DOCUMENT ON AUTHENTICITY (1994)**

**Nara Conference on Authenticity in Relation to the World Heritage Convention, held at Nara, Japan, from 1-6 November 1994**

### **PREAMBLE**

1. We, the experts assembled in Nara (Japan), wish to acknowledge the generous spirit and intellectual courage of the Japanese authorities in providing a timely forum in which we could challenge conventional thinking in the conservation field, and debate ways and means of broadening our horizons to bring greater respect for cultural and heritage diversity to conservation practice.
2. We also wish to acknowledge the value of the framework for discussion provided by the World Heritage Committee's desire to apply the test of authenticity in ways which accord full respect to the social and cultural values of all societies, in examining the outstanding universal value of cultural properties proposed for the World Heritage List.
3. The Nara Document on Authenticity is conceived in the spirit of the Charter of Venice, 1964, and builds on it and extends it in response to the expanding scope of cultural heritage concerns and interests in our contemporary world.
4. In a world that is increasingly subject to the forces of globalization and homogenization, and in a world in which the search for cultural identity is sometimes pursued through aggressive nationalism and the suppression of the cultures of minorities, the essential contribution made by the consideration of authenticity in conservation practice is to clarify and illuminate the collective memory of humanity.

## CULTURAL DIVERSITY AND HERITAGE DIVERSITY

5. The diversity of cultures and heritage in our world is an irreplaceable source of spiritual and intellectual richness for all humankind. The protection and enhancement of cultural and heritage diversity in our world should be actively promoted as an essential aspect of human development.
6. Cultural heritage diversity exists in time and space, and demands respect for other cultures and all aspects of their belief systems. In cases where cultural values appear to be in conflict, respect for cultural diversity demands acknowledgment of the legitimacy of the cultural values of all parties.
7. All cultures and societies are rooted in the particular forms and means of tangible and intangible expression which constitute their heritage, and these should be respected.
8. It is important to underline a fundamental principle of UNESCO, to the effect that the cultural heritage of each is the cultural heritage of all. Responsibility for cultural heritage and the management of it belongs, in the first place, to the cultural community that has generated it, and subsequently to that which cares for it. However, in addition to these responsibilities, adherence to the international charters and conventions developed for conservation of cultural heritage also obliges consideration of the principles and responsibilities flowing from them. Balancing their own requirements with those of other cultural communities is, for each community, highly desirable, provided achieving this balance does not undermine their fundamental cultural values.

## VALUES AND AUTHENTICITY

9. Conservation of cultural heritage in all its forms and historical periods is rooted in the values attributed to the heritage. Our ability to understand these values depends, in part, on the degree to which information sources about these values may be understood as credible or truthful. Knowledge and understanding of these sources of information, in relation to original and subsequent characteristics

of the cultural heritage, and their meaning, is a requisite basis for assessing all aspects of authenticity.

10. Authenticity, considered in this way and affirmed in the Charter of Venice, appears as the essential qualifying factor concerning values. The understanding of authenticity plays a fundamental role in all scientific studies of the cultural heritage, in conservation and restoration planning, as well as within the inscription procedures used for the World Heritage Convention and other cultural heritage inventories.
11. All judgements about values attributed to cultural properties as well as the credibility of related information sources may differ from culture to culture, and even within the same culture. It is thus not possible to base judgements of values and authenticity within fixed criteria. On the contrary, the respect due to all cultures requires that heritage properties must be considered and judged within the cultural contexts to which they belong.
12. Therefore, it is of the highest importance and urgency that, within each culture, recognition be accorded to the specific nature of its heritage values and the credibility and truthfulness of related information sources.
13. Depending on the nature of the cultural heritage, its cultural context, and its evolution through time, authenticity judgements may be linked to the worth of a great variety of sources of information. Aspects of the sources may include form and design, materials and substance, use and function, traditions and techniques, location and setting, and spirit and feeling, and other internal and external factors. The use of these sources permits elaboration of the specific artistic, historic, social, and scientific dimensions of the cultural heritage being examined.

## APPENDIX 1

Suggestions for follow-up (proposed by H. Stovel)

1. Respect for cultural and heritage diversity requires conscious efforts to avoid imposing mechanistic formulae or standardized procedures in attempting to define or determine authenticity of particular monuments and sites.

2. Efforts to determine authenticity in a manner respectful of cultures and heritage diversity requires approaches which encourage cultures to develop analytical processes and tools specific to their nature and needs. Such approaches may have several aspects in common:
  - efforts to ensure assessment of authenticity involve multidisciplinary collaboration and the appropriate utilization of all available expertise and knowledge;
  - efforts to ensure attributed values are truly representative of a culture and the diversity of its interests, in particular monuments and sites;
  - efforts to document clearly the particular nature of authenticity for monuments and sites as a practical guide to future treatment and monitoring;
  - efforts to update authenticity assessments in light of changing values and circumstances.
3. Particularly important are efforts to ensure that attributed values are respected, and that their determination includes efforts to build, as far as possible, a multidisciplinary and community consensus concerning these values.
4. Approaches should also build on and facilitate international co-operation among all those with an interest in conservation of cultural heritage, in order to improve global respect and understanding for the diverse expressions and values of each culture.
5. Continuation and extension of this dialogue to the various regions and cultures of the world is a prerequisite to increasing the practical value of consideration of authenticity in the conservation of the common heritage of humankind.
6. Increasing awareness within the public of this fundamental dimension of heritage is an absolute necessity in order to arrive at concrete measures for safeguarding the vestiges of the past. This means developing greater understanding of the values represented by the cultural properties themselves, as well as respecting the role such monuments and sites play in contemporary society.

## APPENDIX 2

### Definitions

**Conservation:** all efforts designed to understand cultural heritage, know its history and meaning, ensure its material safeguard and, as required, its presentation, restoration and enhancement. (Cultural heritage is understood to include monuments, groups of buildings and sites of cultural value as defined in article one of the World Heritage Convention).

**Information sources:** all material, written, oral and figurative sources which make it possible to know the nature, specifications, meaning and history of the cultural heritage.

*The Nara Document on Authenticity was drafted by the 45 participants at the Nara Conference on Authenticity in Relation to the World Heritage Convention, held at Nara, Japan, from 1-6 November 1994, at the invitation of the Agency for Cultural Affairs (Government of Japan) and the Nara Prefecture. The Agency organized the Nara Conference in cooperation with UNESCO, ICCROM and ICOMOS.*

*This final version of the Nara Document has been edited by the general rapporteurs of the Nara Conference, Mr. Raymond Lemaire and Mr. Herb Stovel.*

<https://www.icomos.org/en/resources/charters-and-texts>









**MEXICO 1999**

## **CHARTER ON THE BUILT VERNACULAR HERITAGE (1999)**

**Ratified by the ICOMOS 12th General Assembly, in Mexico, October 1999**

### **INTRODUCTION**

The built vernacular heritage occupies a central place in the affection and pride of all peoples. It has been accepted as a characteristic and attractive product of society. It appears informal, but nevertheless orderly. It is utilitarian and at the same time possesses interest and beauty. It is a focus of contemporary life and at the same time a record of the history of society. Although it is the work of man it is also the creation of time. It would be unworthy of the heritage of man if care were not taken to conserve these traditional harmonies which constitute the core of man's own existence.

The built vernacular heritage is important; it is the fundamental expression of the culture of a community, of its relationship with its territory and, at the same time, the expression of the world's cultural diversity.

Vernacular building is the traditional and natural way by which communities house themselves. It is a continuing process including necessary changes and continuous adaptation as a response to social and environmental constraints. The survival of this tradition is threatened world-wide by the forces of economic, cultural and architectural homogenisation. How these forces can be met is a fundamental problem that must be addressed by communities and also by governments, planners, architects, conservationists and by a multidisciplinary group of specialists.

Due to the homogenisation of culture and of global socio-economic transformation, vernacular structures all around the world are extremely vulnerable, facing serious problems of obsolescence, internal equilibrium and integration.

It is necessary, therefore, in addition to the Venice Charter, to establish principles for the care and protection of our built vernacular heritage.



## GENERAL ISSUES

1. Examples of the vernacular may be recognised by:
  - a) A manner of building shared by the community;
  - b) A recognisable local or regional character responsive to the environment;
  - c) Coherence of style, form and appearance, or the use of traditionally established building types;
  - d) Traditional expertise in design and construction which is transmitted informally;
  - e) An effective response to functional, social and environmental constraints;
  - f) The effective application of traditional construction systems and crafts.
2. The appreciation and successful protection of the vernacular heritage depend on the involvement and support of the community, continuing use and maintenance.
3. Governments and responsible authorities must recognise the right of all communities to maintain their living traditions, to protect these through all available legislative, administrative and financial means and to hand them down to future generations.

## PRINCIPLES OF CONSERVATION

1. The conservation of the built vernacular heritage must be carried out by multidisciplinary expertise while recognising the inevitability of change and development, and the need to respect the community's established cultural identity.
2. Contemporary work on vernacular buildings, groups and settlements should respect their cultural values and their traditional character.
3. The vernacular is only seldom represented by single structures, and it is best conserved by maintaining and preserving groups and settlements of a representative character, region by region.

4. The built vernacular heritage is an integral part of the cultural landscape and this relationship must be taken into consideration in the development of conservation approaches.
5. The vernacular embraces not only the physical form and fabric of buildings, structures and spaces, but the ways in which they are used and understood, and the traditions and the intangible associations which attach to them.

## GUIDELINES IN PRACTICE

1. Research and documentation  
Any physical work on a vernacular structure should be cautious and should be preceded by a full analysis of its form and structure. This document should be lodged in a publicly accessible archive.
2. Siting, landscape and groups of buildings  
Interventions to vernacular structures should be carried out in a manner which will respect and maintain the integrity of the siting, the relationship to the physical and cultural landscape, and of one structure to another.
3. Traditional building systems  
The continuity of traditional building systems and craft skills associated with the vernacular is fundamental for vernacular expression, and essential for the repair and restoration of these structures. Such skills should be retained, recorded and passed on to new generations of craftsmen and builders in education and training.
4. Replacement of materials and parts  
Alterations which legitimately respond to the demands of contemporary use should be effected by the introduction of materials which maintain a consistency of expression, appearance, texture and form throughout the structure and a consistency of building materials.
5. Adaptation  
Adaptation and reuse of vernacular structures should be carried out in a manner which will respect the integrity of the structure, its character

and form while being compatible with acceptable standards of living. Where there is no break in the continuous utilisation of vernacular forms, a code of ethics within the community can serve as a tool of intervention.

6. Changes and period restoration

Changes over time should be appreciated and understood as important aspects of vernacular architecture. Conformity of all parts of a building to a single period, will not normally be the goal of work on vernacular structures.

7. Training

In order to conserve the cultural values of vernacular expression, governments, responsible authorities, groups and organisations must place emphasis on the following:

- a) Education programmes for conservators in the principles of the vernacular;
- b) Training programmes to assist communities in maintaining traditional building systems, materials and craft skills;
- c) Information programmes which improve public awareness of the vernacular especially amongst the younger generation.
- d) Regional networks on vernacular architecture to exchange expertise and experiences.

CIAV:

Madrid, January 30, 1996

Jerusalem, March 28, 1996

Mikkeli, February 26, 1998

Santo Domingo, August 26, 1998

ICOMOS: Stockholm, September 10, 1998

<https://www.icomos.org/en/resources/charters-and-texts>









**MEXICO 1999**

## **INTERNATIONAL CULTURAL TOURISM CHARTER**

### **Managing Tourism at Places of Heritage Significance (1999)**

Adopted by ICOMOS at the 12th General Assembly in Mexico, October 1999.

#### **INTRODUCTION**

##### **The Charter Ethos**

At the broadest level, the natural and cultural heritage belongs to all people. We each have a right and responsibility to understand, appreciate and conserve its universal values.

Heritage is a broad concept and includes the natural as well as the cultural environment. It encompasses landscapes, historic places, sites and built environments, as well as biodiversity, collections, past and continuing cultural practices, knowledge and living experiences. It records and expresses the long processes of historic development, forming the essence of diverse national, regional, indigenous and local identities and is an integral part of modern life. It is a dynamic reference point and positive instrument for growth and change. The particular heritage and collective memory of each locality or community is irreplaceable and an important foundation for development, both now and into the future.

At a time of increasing globalisation, the protection, conservation, interpretation and presentation of the heritage and cultural diversity of any particular place or region is an important challenge for people everywhere. However, management of that heritage, within a framework of internationally recognised and appropriately applied standards, is usually the responsibility of the particular community or custodian group.

A primary objective for managing heritage is to communicate its significance and need for its conservation to its host community and to visitors. Reasonable and well managed physical, intellectual and/or emotive access to heritage and cultural development is both a right and a privilege. It brings with it a duty of respect for the heritage values, interests and equity of the present-day host community, indigenous custodians or owners of historic property and for the landscapes and cultures from which that heritage evolved.

## The Dynamic Interaction between Tourism and Cultural Heritage

Domestic and international tourism continues to be among the foremost vehicles for cultural exchange, providing a personal experience, not only of that which has survived from the past, but of the contemporary life and society of others. It is increasingly appreciated as a positive force for natural and cultural conservation. Tourism can capture the economic characteristics of the heritage and harness these for conservation by generating funding, educating the community and influencing policy. It is an essential part of many national and regional economies and can be an important factor in development, when managed successfully.

Tourism itself has become an increasingly complex phenomenon, with political, economic, social, cultural, educational, bio-physical, ecological and aesthetic dimensions. The achievement of a beneficial inter-action between the potentially conflicting expectations and aspirations of visitors and host or local communities, presents many challenges and opportunities.

The natural and cultural heritage, diversities and living cultures are major tourism attractions. Excessive or poorly-managed tourism and tourism related development can threaten their physical nature, integrity and significant characteristics. The ecological setting, culture and lifestyles of host communities may also be degraded, along with the visitor's experience of the place.

Tourism should bring benefits to host communities and provide an important means and motivation for them to care for and maintain their heritage and cultural practices. The involvement and co-operation of local and/or indigenous community representatives, conservationists, tourism operators, property owners, policy makers, those preparing national development plans and site managers is necessary to achieve a sustainable tourism industry and enhance the protection of heritage resources for future generations.

ICOMOS, the International Council on Monuments and Sites, as the author of this Charter, other international organisations and the tourism industry, are dedicated to this challenge.

## Objectives of the Charter

The Objectives of the International Cultural Tourism Charter are:

- To facilitate and encourage those involved with heritage conservation and management to make the significance of that heritage accessible to the host community and visitors.
- To facilitate and encourage the tourism industry to promote and manage tourism in ways that respect and enhance the heritage and living cultures of host communities.
- To facilitate and encourage a dialogue between conservation interests and the tourism industry about the importance and fragile nature of heritage places, collections and living cultures, including the need to achieve a sustainable future for them.
- To encourage those formulating plans and policies to develop detailed, measurable goals and strategies relating to the presentation and interpretation of heritage places and cultural activities, in the context of their preservation and conservation.

In addition,

- The Charter supports wider initiatives by ICOMOS, other international bodies and the tourism industry in maintaining the integrity of heritage management and conservation.
- The Charter encourages the involvement of all those with relevant or at times conflicting interests, responsibilities and obligations to join in achieving its objectives.
- The Charter encourages the formulation of detailed guidelines by interested parties, facilitating the implementation of the Principles to their specific circumstances or the requirements of particular organisations and communities.

## PRINCIPLES OF THE CULTURAL TOURISM CHARTER

### Principle 1

**Since domestic and international tourism is among the foremost vehicles for cultural exchange, conservation should provide responsible and well managed opportunities for members of the host community and visitors to experience and understand that community's heritage and culture at first hand.**

#### 1.1

The natural and cultural heritage is a material and spiritual resource, providing a narrative of historical development. It has an important role in modern life and should be made physically, intellectually and/or emotively accessible to the general public. Programmes for the protection and conservation of the physical attributes, intangible aspects, contemporary cultural expressions and broad context, should facilitate an understanding and appreciation of the heritage significance by the host community and the visitor, in an equitable and affordable manner.

#### 1.2

Individual aspects of natural and cultural heritage have differing levels of significance, some with universal values, others of national, regional or local importance. Interpretation programmes should present that significance in a relevant and accessible manner to the host community and the visitor, with appropriate, stimulating and contemporary forms of education, media, technology and personal explanation of historical, environmental and cultural information.

#### 1.3

Interpretation and presentation programmes should facilitate and encourage the high level of public awareness and support necessary for the long term survival of the natural and cultural heritage.

#### 1.4

Interpretation programmes should present the significance of heritage places, traditions and cultural practices within the past experience and present

diversities of the area and the host community, including that of minority cultural or linguistic groups. The visitor should always be informed of the differing cultural values that may be ascribed to a particular heritage resource.

### Principle 2

**The relationship between Heritage Places and Tourism is dynamic and may involve conflicting values. It should be managed in a sustainable way for present and future generations.**

#### 2.1

Places of heritage significance have an intrinsic value for all people as an important basis for cultural diversity and social development. The long term protection and conservation of living cultures, heritage places, collections, their physical and ecological integrity and their environmental context, should be an essential component of social, economic, political, legislative, cultural and tourism development policies.

#### 2.2

The interaction between heritage resources or values and tourism is dynamic and ever changing, generating both opportunities and challenges, as well as potential conflicts. Tourism projects, activities and developments should achieve positive outcomes and minimise adverse impacts on the heritage and lifestyles of the host community, while responding to the needs and aspirations of the visitor.

#### 2.3

Conservation, interpretation and tourism development programmes should be based on a comprehensive understanding of the specific, but often complex or conflicting aspects of heritage significance of the particular place. Continuing research and consultation are important to furthering the evolving understanding and appreciation of that significance.

#### 2.4

The retention of the authenticity of heritage places and collections is important. It is an essential element of their cultural significance,



as expressed in the physical material, collected memory and intangible traditions that remain from the past. Programmes should present and interpret the authenticity of places and cultural experiences to enhance the appreciation and understanding of that cultural heritage.

### 2.5

Tourism development and infrastructure projects should take account of the aesthetic, social and cultural dimensions, natural and cultural landscapes, bio-diversity characteristics and the broader visual context of heritage places. Preference should be given to using local materials and take account of local architectural styles or vernacular traditions.

### 2.6

Before heritage places are promoted or developed for increased tourism, management plans should assess the natural and cultural values of the resource. They should then establish appropriate limits of acceptable change, particularly in relation to the impact of visitor numbers on the physical characteristics, integrity, ecology and biodiversity of the place, local access and transportation systems and the social, economic and cultural well being of the host community. If the likely level of change is unacceptable the development proposal should be modified.

### 2.7

There should be on-going programmes of evaluation to assess the progressive impacts of tourism activities and development on the particular place or community.

## Principle 3

**Conservation and Tourism Planning for Heritage Places should ensure that the Visitor Experience will be worthwhile, satisfying and enjoyable.**

### 3.1

Conservation and tourism programmes should present high quality information to optimise the visitor's understanding of the significant heritage characteristics and of the need for their protection, enabling the visitor to enjoy the place in an appropriate manner.

### 3.2

Visitors should be able to experience the heritage place at their own pace, if they so choose. Specific circulation routes may be necessary to minimise impacts on the integrity and physical fabric of a place, its natural and cultural characteristics.

### 3.3

Respect for the sanctity of spiritual places, practices and traditions is an important consideration for site managers, visitors, policy makers, planners and tourism operators. Visitors should be encouraged to behave as welcomed guests, respecting the values and lifestyles of the host community, rejecting possible theft or illicit trade in cultural property and conducting themselves in a responsible manner which would generate a renewed welcome, should they return.

### 3.4

Planning for tourism activities should provide appropriate facilities for the comfort, safety and well-being of the visitor, that enhance the enjoyment of the visit but do not adversely impact on the significant features or ecological characteristics.

## Principle 4

**Host communities and indigenous peoples should be involved in planning for conservation and tourism.**

### 4.1

The rights and interests of the host community, at regional and local levels, property owners and relevant indigenous peoples who may exercise traditional rights or responsibilities over their own land and its significant sites, should be respected. They should be involved in establishing goals, strategies, policies and protocols for the identification, conservation, management, presentation and interpretation of their heritage resources, cultural practices and contemporary cultural expressions, in the tourism context.

### 4.2

While the heritage of any specific place or region may have a universal dimension, the needs and wishes of some communities or indigenous peoples

to restrict or manage physical, spiritual or intellectual access to certain cultural practices, knowledge, beliefs, activities, artefacts or sites should be respected.

## **Principle 5**

### **Tourism and conservation activities should benefit the host community.**

#### **5.1**

Policy makers should promote measures for the equitable distribution of the benefits of tourism to be shared across countries or regions, improving the levels of socio-economic development and contributing where necessary to poverty alleviation.

#### **5.2**

Conservation management and tourism activities should provide equitable economic, social and cultural benefits to the men and women of the host or local community, at all levels, through education, training and the creation of full-time employment opportunities.

#### **5.3**

A significant proportion of the revenue specifically derived from tourism programmes to heritage places should be allotted to the protection, conservation and presentation of those places, including their natural and cultural contexts. Where possible, visitors should be advised of this revenue allocation.

#### **5.4**

Tourism programmes should encourage the training and employment of guides and site interpreters from the host community to enhance the skills of local people in the presentation and interpretation of their cultural values.

#### **5.5**

Heritage interpretation and education programmes among the people of the host community should encourage the involvement of local site interpreters. The programmes should promote a knowledge and respect for their heritage, encouraging the local people to take a direct interest in its care and conservation.

#### **5.6**

Conservation management and tourism programmes should include education and training opportunities for policy makers, planners, researchers, designers, architects, interpreters, conservators and tourism operators. Participants should be encouraged to understand and help resolve the at times conflicting issues, opportunities and problems encountered by their colleagues.

## **Principle 6**

### **Tourism promotion programmes should protect and enhance Natural and Cultural Heritage characteristics.**

#### **6.1**

Tourism promotion programmes should create realistic expectations and responsibly inform potential visitors of the specific heritage characteristics of a place or host community, thereby encouraging them to behave appropriately.

#### **6.2**

Places and collections of heritage significance should be promoted and managed in ways which protect their authenticity and enhance the visitor experience by minimising fluctuations in arrivals and avoiding excessive numbers of visitors at any one time.

#### **6.3**

Tourism promotion programmes should provide a wider distribution of benefits and relieve the pressures on more popular places by encouraging visitors to experience the wider cultural and natural heritage characteristics of the region or locality.

#### **6.4**

The promotion, distribution and sale of local crafts and other products should provide a reasonable social and economic return to the host community, while ensuring that their cultural integrity is not degraded.

<https://www.icomos.org/en/resources/charters-and-texts>









**MEXICO 1999**

## **PRINCIPLES FOR THE PRESERVATION OF HISTORIC TIMBER STRUCTURES (1999)**

**Adopted by ICOMOS at the 12th General Assembly in Mexico, October 1999.**

The aim of this document is to define basic and universally applicable principles and practices for the protection and preservation of historic timber structures with due respect to their cultural significance. Historic timber structures refer here to all types of buildings or constructions wholly or partially in timber that have cultural significance or that are parts of a historic area.

For the purpose of the preservation of such structures, the Principles:

- recognise the importance of timber structures from all periods as part of the cultural heritage of the world;
- take into account the great diversity of historic timber structures;
- take into account the various species and qualities of wood used to build them;
- recognise the vulnerability of structures wholly or partially in timber due to material decay and degradation in varying environmental and climatic conditions, caused by humidity fluctuations, light, fungal and insect attacks, wear and tear, fire and other disasters;
- recognise the increasing scarcity of historic timber structures due to vulnerability, misuse and the loss of skills and knowledge of traditional design and construction technology;
- take into account the great variety of actions and treatments required for the preservation and conservation of these heritage resources;
- note the Venice Charter, the Burra Charter and related UNESCO and ICOMOS doctrine, and seek to apply these general principles to the protection and preservation of historic timber structures.

And make the following recommendations:

## INSPECTION, RECORDING AND DOCUMENTATION

1. The condition of the structure and its components should be carefully recorded before any intervention, as well as all materials used in treatments, in accordance with Article 16 of the Venice Charter and the ICOMOS Principles for the Recording of Monuments, Groups of Buildings and Sites. All pertinent documentation, including characteristic samples of redundant materials or members removed from the structure, and information about relevant traditional skills and technologies, should be collected, catalogued, securely stored and made accessible as appropriate. The documentation should also include the specific reasons given for choice of materials and methods in the preservation work.
2. A thorough and accurate diagnosis of the condition and the causes of decay and structural failure of the timber structure should precede any intervention. The diagnosis should be based on documentary evidence, physical inspection and analysis, and, if necessary, measurements of physical conditions and non-destructive testing methods. This should not prevent necessary minor interventions and emergency measures.

## MONITORING AND MAINTENANCE

3. A coherent strategy of regular monitoring and maintenance is crucial for the protection of historic timber structures and their cultural significance.

## INTERVENTIONS

4. The primary aim of preservation and conservation is to maintain the historical authenticity and integrity of the cultural heritage. Each intervention should therefore be based on proper studies and assessments. Problems should be solved according to relevant conditions and needs with due respect for the aesthetic and historical values, and the physical integrity of the historic structure or site.

5. Any proposed intervention should for preference:
  - a) follow traditional means;
  - b) be reversible, if technically possible; or
  - c) at least not prejudice or impede future preservation work whenever this may become necessary; and
  - d) not hinder the possibility of later access to evidence incorporated in the structure.
6. The minimum intervention in the fabric of a historic timber structure is an ideal. In certain circumstances, minimum intervention can mean that their preservation and conservation may require the complete or partial dismantling and subsequent reassembly in order to allow for the repair of timber structures.
7. In the case of interventions, the historic structure should be considered as a whole; all material, including structural members, in-fill panels, weather-boarding, roofs, floors, doors and windows, etc., should be given equal attention. In principle, as much as possible of the existing material should be retained. The protection should also include surface finishes such as plaster, paint, coating, wall-paper, etc. If it is necessary to renew or replace surface finishes, the original materials, techniques and textures should be duplicated as far as possible.
8. The aim of restoration is to conserve the historic structure and its loadbearing function and to reveal its cultural values by improving the legibility of its historical integrity, its earlier state and design within the limits of existing historic material evidence, as indicated in articles 9–13 of the Venice Charter. Removed members and other components of the historic structure should be catalogued, and characteristic samples kept in permanent storage as part of the documentation.

## REPAIR AND REPLACEMENT

9. In the repair of a historic structure, replacement timber can be used with due respect to relevant historical and aesthetical values, and where it is an appropriate response to the need to replace decayed or damaged members or their parts, or to the requirements of restoration.

New members or parts of members should be made of the same species of wood with the same, or, if appropriate, with better, grading as in the members being replaced. Where possible, this should also include similar natural characteristics. The moisture content and other physical characteristics of the replacement timber should be compatible with the existing structure.

Craftsmanship and construction technology, including the use of dressing tools or machinery, should, where possible, correspond with those used originally. Nails and other secondary materials should, where appropriate, duplicate the originals.

If a part of a member is replaced, traditional woodwork joints should, if appropriate and compatible with structural requirements, be used to splice the new and the existing part.

10. It should be accepted that new members or parts of members will be distinguishable from the existing ones. To copy the natural decay or deformation of the replaced members or parts is not desirable. Appropriate traditional or well-tested modern methods may be used to match the colouring of the old and the new with due regard that this will not harm or degrade the surface of the wooden member.
11. New members or parts of members should be discretely marked, by carving, by marks burnt into the wood or by other methods, so that they can be identified later.

## HISTORIC FOREST RESERVES

12. The establishment and protection of forest or woodland reserves where appropriate timber can be obtained for the preservation and repair of historic timber structures should be encouraged.

Institutions responsible for the preservation and conservation of historic structures and sites should establish or encourage the establishment of stores of timber appropriate for such work.

## CONTEMPORARY MATERIALS AND TECHNOLOGIES

13. Contemporary materials, such as epoxy resins, and techniques, such as structural steel reinforcement, should be chosen and used

with the greatest caution, and only in cases where the durability and structural behaviour of the materials and construction techniques have been satisfactorily proven over a sufficiently long period of time. Utilities, such as heating, and fire detection and prevention systems, should be installed with due recognition of the historic and aesthetic significance of the structure or site.

14. The use of chemical preservatives should be carefully controlled and monitored, and should be used only where there is an assured benefit, where public and environmental safety will not be affected and where the likelihood of success over the long term is significant.

## EDUCATION AND TRAINING

15. Regeneration of values related to the cultural significance of historic timber structures through educational programmes is an essential requisite of a sustainable preservation and development policy. The establishment and further development of training programmes on the protection, preservation and conservation of historic timber structures are encouraged. Such training should be based on a comprehensive strategy integrated within the needs of sustainable production and consumption, and include programmes at the local, national, regional and international levels. The programmes should address all relevant professions and trades involved in such work, and, in particular, architects, conservators, engineers, craftspersons and site managers.

<https://www.icomos.org/en/resources/charters-and-texts>











## FLORENCE 2000

# EUROPEAN LANDSCAPE CONVENTION\*

Council of Europe, Florence, 20.X.2000

### Preamble

The member States of the Council of Europe signatory hereto, Considering that the aim of the Council of Europe is to achieve a greater unity between its members for the purpose of safeguarding and realising the ideals and principles which are their common heritage, and that this aim is pursued in particular through agreements in the economic and social fields;

Concerned to achieve sustainable development based on a balanced and harmonious relationship between social needs, economic activity and the environment;

Noting that the landscape has an important public interest role in the cultural, ecological, environmental and social fields, and constitutes a resource favourable to economic activity and whose protection, management and planning can contribute to job creation;

Aware that the landscape contributes to the formation of local cultures and that it is a basic component of the European natural and cultural heritage, contributing to human well-being and consolidation of the European identity;

Acknowledging that the landscape is an important part of the quality of life for people everywhere: in urban areas and in the countryside, in degraded areas as well as in areas of high quality, in areas recognised as being of outstanding beauty as well as everyday areas;

---

\* The Treaty of Lisbon amending the Treaty on European Union and the Treaty establishing the European Community entered into force on 1 December 2009. As a consequence, as from that date, any reference to the European Economic Community shall be read as the European Union.

Noting that developments in agriculture, forestry, industrial and mineral production techniques and in regional planning, town planning, transport, infrastructure, tourism and recreation and, at a more general level, changes in the world economy are in many cases accelerating the transformation of landscapes;

Wishing to respond to the public's wish to enjoy high quality landscapes and to play an active part in the development of landscapes;

Believing that the landscape is a key element of individual and social well-being and that its protection, management and planning entail rights and responsibilities for everyone;

Having regard to the legal texts existing at international level in the field of protection and management of the natural and cultural heritage, regional and spatial planning, local self-government and transfrontier co-operation, in particular the Convention on the Conservation of European Wildlife and Natural Habitats (Bern, 19 September 1979), the Convention for the Protection of the Architectural Heritage of Europe (Granada, 3 October 1985), the European Convention on the Protection of the Archaeological Heritage (revised) (Valletta, 16 January 1992), the European Outline Convention on Transfrontier Co-operation between Territorial Communities or Authorities (Madrid, 21 May 1980) and its additional protocols, the European Charter of Local Self-government (Strasbourg, 15 October 1985), the Convention on Biological Diversity (Rio, 5 June 1992), the Convention concerning the Protection of the World Cultural and Natural Heritage (Paris, 16 November 1972), and the Convention on Access to Information, Public Participation in Decision-making and Access to Justice on Environmental Matters (Aarhus, 25 June 1998);

Acknowledging that the quality and diversity of European landscapes constitute a common resource, and that it is important to co-operate towards its protection, management and planning;

Wishing to provide a new instrument devoted exclusively to the protection, management and planning of all landscapes in Europe,

Have agreed as follows:

## Chapter I – General provisions

### Article 1 – Definitions

For the purposes of the Convention:

- a “Landscape” means an area, as perceived by people, whose character is the result of the action and interaction of natural and/or human factors;
- b „Landscape policy” means an expression by the competent public authorities of general principles, strategies and guidelines that permit the taking of specific measures aimed at the protection, management and planning of landscapes;
- c „Landscape quality objective” means, for a specific landscape, the formulation by the competent public authorities of the aspirations of the public with regard to the landscape features of their surroundings;
- d „Landscape protection” means actions to conserve and maintain the significant or characteristic features of a landscape, justified by its heritage value derived from its natural configuration and/or from human activity;
- e „Landscape management” means action, from a perspective of sustainable development, to ensure the regular upkeep of a landscape, so as to guide and harmonise changes which are brought about by social, economic and environmental processes;
- f „Landscape planning” means strong forward-looking action to enhance, restore or create landscapes.

### Article 2 – Scope

Subject to the provisions contained in Article 15, this Convention applies to the entire territory of the Parties and covers natural, rural, urban and peri-urban areas. It includes land, inland water and marine areas. It concerns landscapes that might be considered outstanding as well as everyday or degraded landscapes.

### Article 3 – Aims

The aims of this Convention are to promote landscape protection, management and planning, and to organise European co-operation on landscape issues.

## Chapter II – National measures

### Article 4 – Division of responsibilities

Each Party shall implement this Convention, in particular Articles 5 and 6, according to its own division of powers, in conformity with its constitutional principles and administrative arrangements, and respecting the principle of subsidiarity, taking into account the European Charter of Local Self-government. Without derogating from the provisions of this Convention, each Party shall harmonise the implementation of this Convention with its own policies.

### Article 5 – General measures

Each Party undertakes:

- a to recognise landscapes in law as an essential component of people's surroundings, an expression of the diversity of their shared cultural and natural heritage, and a foundation of their identity;
- b to establish and implement landscape policies aimed at landscape protection, management and planning through the adoption of the specific measures set out in Article 6;
- c to establish procedures for the participation of the general public, local and regional authorities, and other parties with an interest in the definition and implementation of the landscape policies mentioned in paragraph b above;
- d to integrate landscape into its regional and town planning policies and in its cultural, environmental, agricultural, social and economic policies, as well as in any other policies with possible direct or indirect impact on landscape.

### Article 6 – Specific measures

#### A Awareness-raising

Each Party undertakes to increase awareness among the civil society, private organisations, and public authorities of the value of landscapes, their role and changes to them.

#### B Training and education

Each Party undertakes to promote:

- a training for specialists in landscape appraisal and operations;

- b multidisciplinary training programmes in landscape policy, protection, management and planning, for professionals in the private and public sectors and for associations concerned;
- c school and university courses which, in the relevant subject areas, address the values attaching to landscapes and the issues raised by their protection, management and planning.

### C Identification and assessment

1. With the active participation of the interested parties, as stipulated in Article 5.c, and with a view to improving knowledge of its landscapes, each Party undertakes:
  - a
    - i. to identify its own landscapes throughout its territory;
    - ii. to analyse their characteristics and the forces and pressures transforming them;
    - iii. to take note of changes;
  - b to assess the landscapes thus identified, taking into account the particular values assigned to them by the interested parties and the population concerned.
2. These identification and assessment procedures shall be guided by the exchanges of experience and methodology, organised between the Parties at European level pursuant to Article 8.

### D Landscape quality objectives

Each Party undertakes to define landscape quality objectives for the landscapes identified and assessed, after public consultation in accordance with Article 5.c.

### E Implementation

To put landscape policies into effect, each Party undertakes to introduce instruments aimed at protecting, managing and/or planning the landscape.

## Chapter III – European Co-Operation

### Article 7 – International policies and programmes

Parties undertake to co-operate in the consideration of the landscape dimension of international policies and programmes, and to recommend, where relevant, the inclusion in them of landscape considerations.

### **Article 8 – Mutual assistance and exchange of information**

The Parties undertake to co-operate in order to enhance the effectiveness of measures taken under other articles of this Convention, and in particular:

- a to render each other technical and scientific assistance in landscape matters through the pooling and exchange of experience, and the results of research projects;
- b to promote the exchange of landscape specialists in particular for training and information purposes;
- c to exchange information on all matters covered by the provisions of the Convention.

### **Article 9 – Transfrontier landscapes**

The Parties shall encourage transfrontier co-operation on local and regional level and, wherever necessary, prepare and implement joint landscape programmes.

### **Article 10 – Monitoring of the implementation of the Convention**

1. Existing competent Committees of Experts set up under Article 17 of the Statute of the Council of Europe shall be designated by the Committee of Ministers of the Council of Europe to be responsible for monitoring the implementation of the Convention.
2. Following each meeting of the Committees of Experts, the Secretary General of the Council of Europe shall transmit a report on the work carried out and on the operation of the Convention to the Committee of Ministers.
3. The Committees of Experts shall propose to the Committee of Ministers the criteria for conferring and the rules governing the Landscape award of the Council of Europe.

### **Article 11 – Landscape award of the Council of Europe**

1. The Landscape award of the Council of Europe is a distinction which may be conferred on local and regional authorities and their groupings that have instituted, as part of the landscape policy of a Party to this Convention, a policy or measures to protect, manage and/or plan their landscape, which have proved lastingly effective and can thus serve as an example to other territorial authorities in

Europe. The distinction may be also conferred on non-governmental organisations having made particularly remarkable contributions to landscape protection, management or planning.

2. Applications for the Landscape award of the Council of Europe shall be submitted to the Committees of Experts mentioned in Article 10 by the Parties. Transfrontier local and regional authorities and groupings of local and regional authorities concerned, may apply provided that they jointly manage the landscape in question.
3. On proposals from the Committees of Experts mentioned in Article 10 the Committee of Ministers shall define and publish the criteria for conferring the Landscape award of the Council of Europe, adopt the relevant rules and confer the Award.
4. The granting of the Landscape award of the Council of Europe is to encourage those receiving the award to ensure the sustainable protection, management and/or planning of the landscape areas concerned.

## **Chapter IV – Final clauses**

### **Article 12 – Relationship with other instruments**

The provisions of this Convention shall not prejudice stricter provisions concerning landscape protection, management and planning contained in other existing or future binding national or international instruments.

### **Article 13 – Signature, ratification and entry into force**

1. This Convention shall be open for signature by the member States of the Council of Europe. It shall be subject to ratification, acceptance or approval. Instruments of ratification, acceptance or approval shall be deposited with the Secretary General of the Council of Europe.
2. The Convention shall enter into force on the first day of the month following the expiry of a period of three months after the date on which ten member States of the Council of Europe have expressed their consent to be bound by the Convention in accordance with the provisions of the preceding paragraph.
3. In respect of any signatory State which subsequently expresses its consent to be bound by it, the Convention shall enter into force on

the first day of the month following the expiry of a period of three months after the date of the deposit of the instrument of ratification, acceptance or approval.

#### **Article 14 – Accession**

1. After the entry into force of this Convention, the Committee of Ministers of the Council of Europe may invite the European Community and any European State which is not a member of the Council of Europe, to accede to the Convention by a majority decision as provided in Article 20.d of the Council of Europe Statute, and by the unanimous vote of the States parties entitled to hold seats in the Committee of Ministers.
2. In respect of any acceding State, or the European Community in the event of its accession, this Convention shall enter into force on the first day of the month following the expiry of a period of three months after the date of deposit of the instrument of accession with the Secretary General of the Council of Europe.

#### **Article 15 – Territorial application**

1. Any State or the European Community may, at the time of signature or when depositing its instrument of ratification, acceptance, approval or accession, specify the territory or territories to which the Convention shall apply.
2. Any Party may, at any later date, by declaration addressed to the Secretary General of the Council of Europe, extend the application of this Convention to any other territory specified in the declaration. The Convention shall take effect in respect of such territory on the first day of the month following the expiry of a period of three months after the date of receipt of the declaration by the Secretary General.
3. Any declaration made under the two paragraphs above may, in respect of any territory mentioned in such declaration, be withdrawn by notification addressed to the Secretary General of the Council of Europe. Such withdrawal shall become effective on the first day of the month following the expiry of a period of three months after the date of receipt of the notification by the Secretary General.

#### **Article 16 – Denunciation**

1. Any Party may, at any time, denounce this Convention by means of a notification addressed to the Secretary General of the Council of Europe.
2. Such denunciation shall become effective on the first day of the month following the expiry of a period of three months after the date of receipt of the notification by the Secretary General.

#### **Article 17 – Amendments**

1. Any Party or the Committees of Experts mentioned in Article 10 may propose amendments to this Convention.
2. Any proposal for amendment shall be notified to the Secretary General of the Council of Europe who shall communicate it to the member States of the Council of Europe, to the others Parties, and to any European non-member State which has been invited to accede to this Convention in accordance with the provisions of Article 14.
3. The Committees of Experts mentioned in Article 10 shall examine any amendment proposed and submit the text adopted by a majority of three-quarters of the Parties' representatives to the Committee of Ministers for adoption. Following its adoption by the Committee of Ministers by the majority provided for in Article 20.d of the Statute of the Council of Europe and by the unanimous vote of the States parties entitled to hold seats in the Committee of Ministers, the text shall be forwarded to the Parties for acceptance.
4. Any amendment shall enter into force in respect of the Parties which have accepted it on the first day of the month following the expiry of a period of three months after the date on which three Council of Europe member States have informed the Secretary General of their acceptance. In respect of any Party which subsequently accepts it, such amendment shall enter into force on the first day of the month following the expiry of a period of three months after the date on which the said Party has informed the Secretary General of its acceptance.



### **Article 18 – Notifications**

The Secretary General of the Council of Europe shall notify the member States of the Council of Europe, any State or the European Community having acceded to this Convention, of:

- a any signature;
- b the deposit of any instrument of ratification, acceptance, approval or accession;
- c any date of entry into force of this Convention in accordance with Articles 13, 14 and 15;
- d any declaration made under Article 15;
- e any denunciation made under Article 16;
- f any proposal for amendment, any amendment adopted pursuant to Article 17 and the date on which it comes into force;
- g any other act, notification, information or communication relating to this Convention.

In witness whereof the undersigned, being duly authorised thereto, have signed this Convention.

Done at Florence, this 20th day of October 2000, in English and in French, both texts being equally authentic, in a single copy which shall be deposited in the archives of the Council of Europe. The Secretary General of the Council of Europe shall transmit certified copies to each member State of the Council of Europe and to any State or to the European Community invited to accede to this Convention.

<https://www.coe.int/en/web/conventions/full-list/-/conventions/rms/0900001680080621>







**KRAKOW 2000**

# **PRINCIPLES FOR CONSERVATION AND RESTORATION OF BUILT HERITAGE**

## **The Charter of Krakow 2000**

**International Conference on Conservation “Krakow 2000”**

*Recognising the contribution of individuals and institutions who, in the course of three years, have participated in the preparation of the International Conference on Conservation “Krakow 2000” and its Plenary Session “Cultural Heritage as the Foundation of the Development of Civilisation”,*

*We, the participants of the International Conference on Conservation “Krakow 2000”, conscious of the profound meanings associated with cultural heritage, submit the following principles to those responsible for heritage as a guideline for the efforts to safeguard such properties.*

### **PREAMBLE**

Acting in the spirit of the Charter of Venice, taking note of the international recommendations and urged on by the process of European unification, at the turn of the new millennium, we are conscious of living within such a framework, in which identities, in an ever more extensive context, are becoming characterised and more distinct. Europe today is characterised by a cultural diversity and thus by the plurality of fundamental values related to the mobile, immobile and intellectual heritage, the different meanings associated with it and consequently also conflicts of interest. This obliges all those responsible for safeguarding cultural heritage to become increasingly attentive to the problems and choices they need to face in pursuing their objectives.

Each community, by means of its collective memory and consciousness of its past, is responsible for the identification as well as the management of its heritage. Individual elements of this heritage are bearers of many values, which may change in time. The various specific

values in the elements characterise the specificity of each heritage. From this process of change, each community develops an awareness and consciousness of a need to look after their own common heritage values.

This heritage cannot be defined in a fixed way. One can only define the way in which the heritage may be identified. Plurality in society entails a great diversity in heritage concepts as conceived by the entire community; therefore the tools and methods developed for appropriate preservation should be adapted to the evolving situations, which are subject to a process of continual change. The particular context of selecting these values requires the preparation of a conservation plan and a series of decisions. These should be codified in a restoration project according to appropriate technical and structural criteria.

Conscious of the profound values of the Charter of Venice and working towards the same aims, we propose the following principles for conservation and restoration of the built heritage in our time.

## AIMS AND METHODS

1. The architectural, urban and landscape heritage, as well as artefacts, are the result of an identification with various associated moments in history and social-cultural contexts. The conservation of this heritage is our aim. **Conservation** can be realised by different types of interventions such as environmental control, maintenance, repair, restoration, renovation and rehabilitation. Any intervention implies decisions, selections and responsibilities related to the complete heritage, also to those parts that may not have a specific meaning today, but might have one in the future.
2. **Maintenance and repairs** are a fundamental part of the process of heritage conservation. These actions have to be organised with systematic research, inspection, control, monitoring and testing. Possible decay has to be foreseen and reported on, and appropriate preventive measures have to be taken.
3. The conservation of built heritage is implemented by the project of restoration, including the strategy to conserve in the long term. This restoration project should be based on a range of appropriate

technical options and prepared in a cognitive process of gathering knowledge and understanding of the building or site. This may include traditional and subsequent new materials, structural investigations, graphical and dimensional analysis and the identification of historical, artistic and socio-cultural significance. All pertinent disciplines have to participate in the restoration project and the co-ordination should be carried out by a person qualified and well trained in conservation and restoration.

4. **The reconstruction** of entire parts 'in the style of the building' should be avoided. Re-construction of very small parts having architectural significance can be acceptable as an exception on condition that it is based on precise and indisputable documentation. If necessary, for a proper use of the building, completion of more extensive spatial and functional parts should reflect contemporary architecture. Reconstruction of an entire building, destroyed by armed conflict or natural disaster, is only acceptable if there are exceptional social or cultural motives that are related to the identity of the entire community.

## DIFFERENT KINDS OF BUILT HERITAGE

5. Any intervention involving the archaeological heritage, due to its vulnerability, should be strictly related to its surroundings, territory and landscape. The destructive aspects of the excavation should be reduced as far as possible. At each excavation, the archaeological work must be fully documented.

As in all other cases, conservation work on archaeological finds must be based on the principle of minimum intervention. This must be done by professionals and the methodology and techniques used must be strictly controlled.

In the protection and public presentation of archaeological sites, the use of modern technologies, databanks, information systems and virtual presentation techniques should be promoted.

6. The purpose of conservation of **historic buildings and monuments**, whether in the urban or rural context, is to maintain their authenticity and integrity, including internal spaces, furnishings and decoration

according to their original appearance. Such conservation requires an appropriate `project of restoration` that defines the methods and aims. In many cases, it also requires an appropriate use, compatible with the existing space and significance. Work on historic buildings must pay full attention to all the periods that are present.

7. **Architectural decoration, sculpture and artefacts** that are an integrated part of the built heritage should be preserved through a specific project connected to the general project. This presupposes that the restorer has the proper knowledge and training in addition to the cultural, technical and operating capacity to interpret the different analyses of the specific artistic fields. The restoration project must guarantee a correct approach to the conservation of the full setting, decoration or sculpture, with respect to traditional building crafts and their necessary integration as a substantial part of the built heritage.
8. **Historic towns and villages**, in their territorial setting, represent an essential part of our universal heritage, and should be seen as a whole with the structures, spaces and human factors, normally in the process of continuous evolution and change. This involves all sectors of the population, and requires an integrated planning process, consisting of a wider range of different activities. Conservation in the urban context deals with ensembles of buildings and open spaces, which are part of larger urban areas, or of entire small urban or rural settlements, including intangible values. In this context, intervention consists of referring to the city in its morphological, functional and structural whole, as part of its territory, its environment and surrounding landscape. The buildings that form historic areas may not have a special architectural value in themselves, but they should be safeguarded because of their organic unity, distinctive dimensions, and their technological, spatial, decorative and chromatic characteristics as connecting elements.

The restoration project of the historic **town or village** should anticipate the management of change, in addition to verifying the sustainability of selected options, linking heritage issues with social and economic aspects. Apart from obtaining knowledge of the structures, there is the need for a study of the influences of change and the tools required for the management process. The project of restoration for historic areas regards the buildings of the urban fabric in their twofold function: a) the

elements that define the spaces of the city within its urban form, and b) the internal spatial arrangements that are an essential part of the building.

9. **Landscapes** as cultural heritage result from and reflect a prolonged interaction in different societies between man, nature and the physical environment. They are testimony to the evolving relationship of communities, individuals and their environment. In this context their conservation, preservation and development focus on human and natural features, integrating material and intangible values. It is important to understand and respect the character of landscapes, and apply appropriate laws and norms to harmonise relevant territorial functions with essential values. In many societies, landscapes are historically related to urban territories and influences.

The integration of cultural landscape conservation, and the sustainable development of regions and localities with ecological activities, and the natural environment require awareness and understanding of the relationships over time. This involves making links with the built environment of the metropolis, city and town.

Integrated conservation of fossil and archaeological landscapes, and the development of a highly dynamic landscapes, involve social, cultural and aesthetic values.

10. Conservation/preservation techniques should be strictly tied to interdisciplinary scientific research on materials and technologies used for the construction, repair and/or restoration of the built heritage. The chosen intervention should respect the original function and ensure compatibility with existing materials, structures and architectural values. Any new materials and technologies should be rigorously tested, compared and understood before application. Although the in situ application of new techniques may be relevant to the continued well-being of original fabric, they should be continually monitored in the light of the achieved results, taking into account their behaviour over time and the possibility of eventual reversibility.

Particular attention is required to improve our knowledge of traditional materials and techniques, and their appropriate continuation in the context of modern society, being in themselves important components of cultural heritage.

## MANAGEMENT

11. The management of dynamic change, transformation and development of historic cities and the cultural heritage in general, consists of appropriate regulation, making choices, and monitoring outcomes. As an essential part of this process, it is necessary to identify risks, anticipate appropriate prevention systems, and create emergency plans of action. Cultural tourism, beside its positive aspects on the local economy, should be considered as such a risk. Attention should also be paid to the optimisation of running costs.

Conservation of cultural heritage should be an integral part of the planning and management processes of a community, as it can contribute to the sustainable, qualitative, economic and social developments of that society.

12. The plurality of heritage values and diversity of interests necessitates a communication structure that allows, in addition to specialists and administrators, an effective participation of inhabitants in the process. It is the responsibility of communities to establish appropriate methods and structures to ensure true participation of individuals and institutions in the decision-making process.

## TRAINING AND EDUCATION

13. Training and education in cultural heritage matters requires social involvement and integration into national systems of education at all levels. The complexity of a restoration project, or any other conservation intervention, involving historic, technical, cultural and economic aspects requires the appointment of a competent and well educated leader.

Education of conservators must be interdisciplinary and involve accurate study of architectural history, theory and techniques of conservation. This should assure the appropriate qualifications necessary to resolve research problems needed to carry out conservation and restoration interventions in a professional and responsible way.

The training of professionals and technicians in the conservation disciplines should take full account of evolving methodologies and

technical knowledge, and be aware of the on-going debate on conservation theories and policies.

The quality of craft and technical work during restoration projects should also be enhanced by improved vocational training.

## LEGAL MEASURES

14. The protection and conservation of the built heritage could be better enabled if greater legal and administrative actions are taken. This should be aimed at ensuring the conservation work is only undertaken by, or under the supervision of, conservation professionals. Legal regulations might also make provision for a period of practical experience in a structured programme. Consideration should be given to newly-trained conservators obtaining a permit for independent practice. This should be gained under the supervision of conservation professionals.

## ANNEX – DEFINITIONS

The redaction committee of this “CHARTER OF KRAKOW” used following terminological concepts :

- a. **Heritage:** Heritage is that complex of man’s works in which a community recognises its particular and specific values and with which it identifies. Identification and specification of heritage is therefore a process related to the choice of values.
- b. **Monument:** A monument is an entity identified as of worth and forming a support to memory. In it, memory recognises aspects that are pertinent to human deeds and thoughts, associated with the historic time line. This may still be within our reach, even though not yet interpreted.
- c. **Authenticity** means the sum of substantial, historically ascertained characteristics: from the original up to the current state, as an outcome of the various transformations that have occurred over time.
- d. Identity is understood as the common reference of both present values generated in the sphere of a community and past values identified in its authenticity.

- e. **Conservation:** Conservation is the complex of attitudes of a community that contributes to making the heritage and its monuments endure. Conservation is achieved with reference to the significance of the entity, with its associated values.
- f. **Restoration:** Restoration is an operation directed on a heritage property, aiming at the conservation of its authenticity and its appropriation by the community.
- g. **Project of restoration:** The project, resulting from the choice of conservation policies, is the process through which conservation of the built heritage and landscape is carried out.





**PARIS 2001**



PARIS 2001

# UNESCO UNIVERSAL DECLARATION ON CULTURAL DIVERSITY

Paris, 2 November 2001

The General Conference,

**Committed** to the full implementation of the human rights and fundamental freedoms proclaimed in the Universal Declaration of Human Rights and other universally recognized legal instruments, such as the two International Covenants of 1966 relating respectively to civil and political rights and to economic, social and cultural rights,

**Recalling** that the Preamble to the Constitution of UNESCO affirms “that the wide diffusion of culture, and the education of humanity for justice and liberty and peace are indispensable to the dignity of man and constitute a sacred duty which all the nations must fulfil in a spirit of mutual assistance and concern”,

**Further recalling** Article I of the Constitution, which assigns to UNESCO among other purposes that of recommending “such international agreements as may be necessary to promote the free flow of ideas by word and image”,

**Referring** to the provisions relating to cultural diversity and the exercise of cultural rights in the international instruments enacted by UNESCO,(1)

**Reaffirming** that culture should be regarded as the set of distinctive spiritual, material, intellectual and emotional features of society or a social group, and that it encompasses, in addition to art and literature, lifestyles, ways of living together, value systems, traditions and beliefs, (2)

**Noting** that culture is at the heart of contemporary debates about identity, social cohesion, and the development of a knowledge-based economy,

**Affirming** that respect for the diversity of cultures, tolerance, dialogue and cooperation, in a climate of mutual trust and understanding are among the best guarantees of international peace and security,

**Aspiring** to greater solidarity on the basis of recognition of cultural diversity, of awareness of the unity of humankind, and of the development of intercultural exchanges,

**Considering** that the process of globalization, facilitated by the rapid development of new information and communication technologies, though representing a challenge for cultural diversity, creates the conditions for renewed dialogue among cultures and civilizations,

**Aware** of the specific mandate which has been entrusted to UNESCO, within the United Nations system, to ensure the preservation and promotion of the fruitful diversity of cultures,

**Proclaims** the following principles and adopts the present Declaration:

## IDENTITY, DIVERSITY AND PLURALISM

### Article 1 – Cultural diversity: the common heritage of humanity

Culture takes diverse forms across time and space. This diversity is embodied in the uniqueness and plurality of the identities of the groups and societies making up humankind. As a source of exchange, innovation and creativity, cultural diversity is as necessary for humankind as biodiversity is for nature. In this sense, it is the common heritage of humanity and should be recognized and affirmed for the benefit of present and future generations.

### Article 2 – From cultural diversity to cultural pluralism

In our increasingly diverse societies, it is essential to ensure harmonious interaction among people and groups with plural, varied and dynamic cultural identities as well as their willingness to live together. Policies for the inclusion and participation of all citizens are guarantees of social cohesion, the vitality of civil society and peace. Thus defined, cultural pluralism gives policy expression to the reality of cultural diversity. Indissociable from a democratic framework, cultural pluralism is conducive to cultural exchange and to the flourishing of creative capacities that sustain public life.

### Article 3 – Cultural diversity as a factor in development

Cultural diversity widens the range of options open to everyone; it is one of the roots of development, understood not simply in terms of economic growth, but also as a means to achieve a more satisfactory intellectual, emotional, moral and spiritual existence.

## CULTURAL DIVERSITY AND HUMAN RIGHTS

### Article 4 – Human rights as guarantees of cultural diversity

The defence of cultural diversity is an ethical imperative, inseparable from respect for human dignity. It implies a commitment to human rights and fundamental freedoms, in particular the rights of persons belonging to minorities and those of indigenous peoples. No one may invoke cultural diversity to infringe upon human rights guaranteed by international law, nor to limit their scope.

### Article 5 – Cultural rights as an enabling environment for cultural diversity

Cultural rights are an integral part of human rights, which are universal, indivisible and interdependent. The flourishing of creative diversity requires the full implementation of cultural rights as defined in Article 27 of the Universal Declaration of Human Rights and in Articles 13 and 15 of the International Covenant on Economic, Social and Cultural Rights. All persons have therefore the right to express themselves and to create and disseminate their work in the language of their choice, and particularly in their mother tongue; all persons are entitled to quality education and training that fully respect their cultural identity; and all persons have the right to participate in the cultural life of their choice and conduct their own cultural practices, subject to respect for human rights and fundamental freedoms.

### Article 6 – Towards access for all to cultural diversity

While ensuring the free flow of ideas by word and image care should be exercised so that all cultures can express themselves and make themselves known. Freedom of expression, media pluralism, multilingualism, equal access to art and to scientific and technological knowledge, including in digital form, and the possibility for all cultures to have access to the means of expression and dissemination are the guarantees of cultural diversity.

## CULTURAL DIVERSITY AND CREATIVITY

### Article 7 – Cultural heritage as the wellspring of creativity

Creation draws on the roots of cultural tradition, but flourishes in contact with other cultures. For this reason, heritage in all its forms must be

preserved, enhanced and handed on to future generations as a record of human experience and aspirations, so as to foster creativity in all its diversity and to inspire genuine dialogue among cultures.

#### **Article 8 – Cultural goods and services: commodities of a unique kind**

In the face of present-day economic and technological change, opening up vast prospects for creation and innovation, particular attention must be paid to the diversity of the supply of creative work, to due recognition of the rights of authors and artists and to the specificity of cultural goods and services which, as vectors of identity, values and meaning, must not be treated as mere commodities or consumer goods.

#### **Article 9 – Cultural policies as catalysts of creativity**

While ensuring the free circulation of ideas and works, cultural policies must create conditions conducive to the production and dissemination of diversified cultural goods and services through cultural industries that have the means to assert themselves at the local and global level. It is for each State, with due regard to its international obligations, to define its cultural policy and to implement it through the means it considers fit, whether by operational support or appropriate regulations.

## **CULTURAL DIVERSITY AND INTERNATIONAL SOLIDARITY**

#### **Article 10 – Strengthening capacities for creation and dissemination worldwide**

In the face of current imbalances in flows and exchanges of cultural goods at the global level, it is necessary to reinforce international cooperation and solidarity aimed at enabling all countries, especially developing countries and countries in transition, to establish cultural industries that are viable and competitive at national and international level.

#### **Article 11 – Building partnerships between the public sector, the private sector and civil society**

Market forces alone cannot guarantee the preservation and promotion of cultural diversity, which is the key to sustainable human development. From this perspective, the pre-eminence of public policy, in partnership with the private sector and civil society, must be reaffirmed.

#### **Article 12 – The role of UNESCO**

UNESCO, by virtue of its mandate and functions, has the responsibility to:

- (a) promote the incorporation of the principles set out in the present Declaration into the development strategies drawn up within the various intergovernmental bodies;
- (b) serve as a reference point and a forum where States, international governmental and nongovernmental organizations, civil society and the private sector may join together in elaborating concepts, objectives and policies in favour of cultural diversity;
- (c) pursue its activities in standard-setting, awareness raising and capacity-building in the areas related to the present Declaration within its fields of competence;
- (d) facilitate the implementation of the Action Plan, the main lines of which are appended to the present Declaration.

---

1 Including, in particular, the Florence Agreement of 1950 and its Nairobi Protocol of 1976, the Universal Copyright Convention of 1952, the Declaration of the Principles of International Cultural Cooperation of 1966, the Convention on the Means of Prohibiting and Preventing the Illicit Import, Export and Transfer of Ownership of Cultural Property of 1970, the Convention for the Protection of the World Cultural and Natural Heritage of 1972, the Declaration on Race and Racial Prejudice of 1978, the Recommendation concerning the Status of the Artist of 1980, and the Recommendation on the Safeguarding of Traditional Culture and Folklore of 1989.

2 This definition is in line with the conclusions of the World Conference on Cultural Policies (MONDIACULT, Mexico City, 1982), of the World Commission on Culture and Development Our Creative Diversity, 1995), and of the Intergovernmental Conference on Cultural Policies for Development (Stockholm, 1998).

## ANNEX II

### Main lines of an action plan for the implementation of the UNESCO Universal Declaration on Cultural Diversity

The Member States commit themselves to taking appropriate steps to disseminate widely the “UNESCO Universal Declaration on Cultural Diversity” and to encourage its effective application, in particular by cooperating with a view to achieving the following objectives:

1. Deepening the international debate on questions relating to cultural diversity, particularly in respect of its links with development and its impact on policy-making, at both national and international level; taking forward notably consideration of the advisability of an international legal instrument on cultural diversity.
2. Advancing in the definition of principles, standards and practices, on both the national and the international levels, as well as of awareness-raising modalities and patterns of cooperation, that are most conducive to the safeguarding and promotion of cultural diversity.
3. Fostering the exchange of knowledge and best practices in regard to cultural pluralism with a view to facilitating, in diversified societies, the inclusion and participation of persons and groups from varied cultural backgrounds.
4. Making further headway in understanding and clarifying the content of cultural rights as an integral part of human rights.
5. Safeguarding the linguistic heritage of humanity and giving support to expression, creation and dissemination in the greatest possible number of languages.
6. Encouraging linguistic diversity – while respecting the mother tongue – at all levels of education, wherever possible, and fostering the learning of several languages from the earliest age.
7. Promoting through education an awareness of the positive value of cultural diversity and improving to this end both curriculum design and teacher education.
8. Incorporating, where appropriate, traditional pedagogies into the education process with a view to preserving and making full use of culturally appropriate methods of communication and transmission of knowledge.
9. Encouraging “digital literacy” and ensuring greater mastery of the new information and communication technologies, which should be seen both as educational disciplines and as pedagogical tools capable of enhancing the effectiveness of educational services.
10. Promoting linguistic diversity in cyberspace and encouraging universal access through the global network to all information in the public domain.
11. Countering the digital divide, in close cooperation in relevant United Nations system organizations, by fostering access by the developing countries to the new technologies, by helping them to master information technologies and by facilitating the digital dissemination of endogenous cultural products and access by those countries to the educational, cultural and scientific digital resources available worldwide.
12. Encouraging the production, safeguarding and dissemination of diversified contents in the media and global information networks and, to that end, promoting the role of public radio and television services in the development of audiovisual productions of good quality, in particular by fostering the establishment of cooperative mechanisms to facilitate their distribution.
13. Formulating policies and strategies for the preservation and enhancement of the cultural and natural heritage, notably the oral and intangible cultural heritage, and combating illicit traffic in cultural goods and services.
14. Respecting and protecting traditional knowledge, in particular that of indigenous peoples; recognizing the contribution of traditional knowledge, particularly with regard to environmental protection and the management of natural resources, and fostering synergies between modern science and local knowledge.
15. Fostering the mobility of creators, artists, researchers, scientists and intellectuals and the development of international research programmes and partnerships, while striving to preserve and enhance the creative capacity of developing countries and countries in transition.
16. Ensuring protection of copyright and related rights in the interest of the development of contemporary creativity and fair remuneration

for creative work, while at the same time upholding a public right of access to culture, in accordance with Article 27 of the Universal Declaration of Human Rights.

17. Assisting in the emergence or consolidation of cultural industries in the developing countries and countries in transition and, to this end, cooperating in the development of the necessary infrastructures and skills, fostering the emergence of viable local markets, and facilitating access for the cultural products of those countries to the global market and international distribution networks.
18. Developing cultural policies, including operational support arrangements and/or appropriate regulatory frameworks, designed to promote the principles enshrined in this Declaration, in accordance with the international obligations incumbent upon each State.
19. Involving the various sections of civil society closely in the framing of public policies aimed at safeguarding and promoting cultural diversity.

20. Recognizing and encouraging the contribution that the private sector can make to enhancing cultural diversity and facilitating, to that end, the establishment of forums for dialogue between the public sector and the private sector.

The Member States recommend that the Director-General take the objectives set forth in this Action Plan into account in the implementation of UNESCO's programmes and communicate it to institutions of the United Nations system and to other intergovernmental and non-governmental organizations concerned with a view to enhancing the synergy of actions in favour of cultural diversity.

[http://portal.unesco.org/en/ev.php-URL\\_ID=13179&URL\\_DO=DO\\_TOPIC&URL\\_SECTION=201.html](http://portal.unesco.org/en/ev.php-URL_ID=13179&URL_DO=DO_TOPIC&URL_SECTION=201.html)





**PARIS 2003**





PARIS 2003

## CONVENTION FOR THE SAFEGUARDING OF THE INTANGIBLE CULTURAL HERITAGE

The General Conference of the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization hereinafter referred to as UNESCO, meeting in Paris, from 29 September to 17 October 2003, at its 32nd session,

*Referring to* existing international human rights instruments, in particular to the Universal Declaration on Human Rights of 1948, the International Covenant on Economic, Social and Cultural Rights of 1966, and the International Covenant on Civil and Political Rights of 1966,

*Considering* the importance of the intangible cultural heritage as a mainspring of cultural diversity and a guarantee of sustainable development, as underscored in the UNESCO Recommendation on the Safeguarding of Traditional Culture and Folklore of 1989, in the UNESCO Universal Declaration on Cultural Diversity of 2001, and in the Istanbul Declaration of 2002 adopted by the Third Round Table of Ministers of Culture,

*Considering* the deep-seated interdependence between the intangible cultural heritage and the tangible cultural and natural heritage,

*Recognizing* that the processes of globalization and social transformation, alongside the conditions they create for renewed dialogue among communities, also give rise, as does the phenomenon of intolerance, to grave threats of deterioration, disappearance and destruction of the intangible cultural heritage, in particular owing to a lack of resources for safeguarding such heritage,

*Being aware* of the universal will and the common concern to safeguard the intangible cultural heritage of humanity,

*Recognizing* that communities, in particular indigenous communities, groups and, in some cases, individuals, play an important role in the production, safeguarding, maintenance and re-creation of the intangible cultural heritage, thus helping to enrich cultural diversity and human creativity,

*Noting* the far-reaching impact of the activities of UNESCO in establishing normative instruments for the protection of the cultural heritage, in particular the Convention for the Protection of the World Cultural and Natural Heritage of 1972, *Noting further* that no binding multilateral instrument as yet exists for the safeguarding of the intangible cultural heritage,

*Considering* that existing international agreements, recommendations and resolutions concerning the cultural and natural heritage need to be effectively enriched and supplemented by means of new provisions relating to the intangible cultural heritage,

*Considering* the need to build greater awareness, especially among the younger generations, of the importance of the intangible cultural heritage and of its safeguarding,

*Considering* that the international community should contribute, together with the States Parties to this Convention, to the safeguarding of such heritage in a spirit of cooperation and mutual assistance,

*Recalling* UNESCO's programmes relating to the intangible cultural heritage, in particular the Proclamation of Masterpieces of the Oral and Intangible Heritage of Humanity,

*Considering* the invaluable role of the intangible cultural heritage as a factor in bringing human beings closer together and ensuring exchange and understanding among them,

*Adopts* this Convention on this seventeenth day of October 2003.

## I. General provisions

### Article 1 – Purposes of the Convention

The purposes of this Convention are:

- (a) to safeguard the intangible cultural heritage;
- (b) to ensure respect for the intangible cultural heritage of the communities, groups and individuals concerned;
- (c) to raise awareness at the local, national and international levels of the importance of the intangible cultural heritage, and of ensuring mutual appreciation thereof;
- (d) to provide for international cooperation and assistance.

### Article 2 – Definitions

For the purposes of this Convention,

1. The “intangible cultural heritage” means the practices, representations, expressions, knowledge, skills – as well as the instruments, objects, artefacts and cultural spaces associated therewith – that communities, groups and, in some cases, individuals recognize as part of their cultural heritage. This intangible cultural heritage, transmitted from generation to generation, is constantly recreated by communities and groups in response to their environment, their interaction with nature and their history, and provides them with a sense of identity and continuity, thus promoting respect for cultural diversity and human creativity. For the purposes of this Convention, consideration will be given solely to such intangible cultural heritage as is compatible with existing international human rights instruments, as well as with the requirements of mutual respect among communities, groups and individuals, and of sustainable development.
2. The “intangible cultural heritage”, as defined in paragraph 1 above, is manifested *inter alia* in the following domains:
  - (a) oral traditions and expressions, including language as a vehicle of the intangible cultural heritage;
  - (b) performing arts;
  - (c) social practices, rituals and festive events;
  - (d) knowledge and practices concerning nature and the universe;
  - (e) traditional craftsmanship.
3. “Safeguarding” means measures aimed at ensuring the viability of the intangible cultural heritage, including the identification, documentation, research, preservation, protection, promotion, enhancement, transmission, particularly through formal and non-formal education, as well as the revitalization of the various aspects of such heritage.
4. “States Parties” means States which are bound by this Convention and among which this Convention is in force.
5. This Convention applies *mutatis mutandis* to the territories referred to in Article 33 which become Parties to this Convention in accordance

with the conditions set out in that Article. To that extent the expression “States Parties” also refers to such territories.

### **Article 3 – Relationship to other international instruments**

Nothing in this Convention may be interpreted as:

- (a) altering the status or diminishing the level of protection under the 1972 Convention concerning the Protection of the World Cultural and Natural Heritage of World Heritage properties with which an item of the intangible cultural heritage is directly associated; or
- (b) affecting the rights and obligations of States Parties deriving from any international instrument relating to intellectual property rights or to the use of biological and ecological resources to which they are parties.

## **II. Organs of the Convention**

### **Article 4 – General Assembly of the States Parties**

1. A General Assembly of the States Parties is hereby established, hereinafter referred to as “the General Assembly”. The General Assembly is the sovereign body of this Convention.
2. The General Assembly shall meet in ordinary session every two years. It may meet in extraordinary session if it so decides or at the request either of the Intergovernmental Committee for the Safeguarding of the Intangible Cultural Heritage or of at least one-third of the States Parties.
3. The General Assembly shall adopt its own Rules of Procedure.

### **Article 5 – Intergovernmental Committee for the Safeguarding of the Intangible Cultural Heritage**

1. An Intergovernmental Committee for the Safeguarding of the Intangible Cultural Heritage, hereinafter referred to as “the Committee”, is hereby established within UNESCO. It shall be composed of representatives of 18 States Parties, elected by the States Parties meeting in General Assembly, once this Convention enters into force in accordance with Article 34.
2. The number of States Members of the Committee shall be increased to 24 once the number of the States Parties to the Convention reaches 50.

### **Article 6 – Election and terms of office of States Members of the Committee**

1. The election of States Members of the Committee shall obey the principles of equitable geographical representation and rotation.
2. States Members of the Committee shall be elected for a term of four years by States Parties to the Convention meeting in General Assembly.
3. However, the term of office of half of the States Members of the Committee elected at the first election is limited to two years. These States shall be chosen by lot at the first election.
4. Every two years, the General Assembly shall renew half of the States Members of the Committee.
5. It shall also elect as many States Members of the Committee as required to fill vacancies.
6. A State Member of the Committee may not be elected for two consecutive terms.
7. States Members of the Committee shall choose as their representatives persons who are qualified in the various fields of the intangible cultural heritage.

### **Article 7 – Functions of the Committee**

Without prejudice to other prerogatives granted to it by this Convention, the functions of the Committee shall be to:

- (a) promote the objectives of the Convention, and to encourage and monitor the implementation thereof;
- (b) provide guidance on best practices and make recommendations on measures for the safeguarding of the intangible cultural heritage;
- (c) prepare and submit to the General Assembly for approval a draft plan for the use of the resources of the Fund, in accordance with Article 25;
- (d) seek means of increasing its resources, and to take the necessary measures to this end, in accordance with Article 25;
- (e) prepare and submit to the General Assembly for approval operational directives for the implementation of this Convention;

- (f) examine, in accordance with Article 29, the reports submitted by States Parties, and to summarize them for the General Assembly;
- (g) examine requests submitted by States Parties, and to decide thereon, in accordance with objective selection criteria to be established by the Committee and approved by the General Assembly for:
  - (i) inscription on the lists and proposals mentioned under Articles 16, 17 and 18;
  - (ii) the granting of international assistance in accordance with Article 22.

#### **Article 8 – Working methods of the Committee**

1. The Committee shall be answerable to the General Assembly. It shall report to it on all its activities and decisions.
2. The Committee shall adopt its own Rules of Procedure by a two-thirds majority of its Members.
3. The Committee may establish, on a temporary basis, whatever ad hoc consultative bodies it deems necessary to carry out its task.
4. The Committee may invite to its meetings any public or private bodies, as well as private persons, with recognized competence in the various fields of the intangible cultural heritage, in order to consult them on specific matters.

#### **Article 9 – Accreditation of advisory organizations**

1. The Committee shall propose to the General Assembly the accreditation of non-governmental organizations with recognized competence in the field of the intangible cultural heritage to act in an advisory capacity to the Committee.
2. The Committee shall also propose to the General Assembly the criteria for and modalities of such accreditation.

#### **Article 10 – The Secretariat**

1. The Committee shall be assisted by the UNESCO Secretariat.
2. The Secretariat shall prepare the documentation of the General Assembly and of the Committee, as well as the draft agenda of their meetings, and shall ensure the implementation of their decisions.

### **III. Safeguarding of the intangible cultural heritage at the national level**

#### **Article 11 – Role of States Parties**

Each State Party shall:

- (a) take the necessary measures to ensure the safeguarding of the intangible cultural heritage present in its territory;
- (b) among the safeguarding measures referred to in Article 2, paragraph 3, identify and define the various elements of the intangible cultural heritage present in its territory, with the participation of communities, groups and relevant non-governmental organizations.

#### **Article 12 – Inventories**

1. To ensure identification with a view to safeguarding, each State Party shall draw up, in a manner geared to its own situation, one or more inventories of the intangible cultural heritage present in its territory. These inventories shall be regularly updated.
2. When each State Party periodically submits its report to the Committee, in accordance with Article 29, it shall provide relevant information on such inventories.

#### **Article 13 – Other measures for safeguarding**

To ensure the safeguarding, development and promotion of the intangible cultural heritage present in its territory, each State Party shall endeavour to:

- (a) adopt a general policy aimed at promoting the function of the intangible cultural heritage in society, and at integrating the safeguarding of such heritage into planning programmes;
- (b) designate or establish one or more competent bodies for the safeguarding of the intangible cultural heritage present in its territory;
- (c) foster scientific, technical and artistic studies, as well as research methodologies, with a view to effective safeguarding of the intangible cultural heritage, in particular the intangible cultural heritage in danger;

- (d) adopt appropriate legal, technical, administrative and financial measures aimed at:
  - (i) fostering the creation or strengthening of institutions for training in the management of the intangible cultural heritage and the transmission of such heritage through forums and spaces intended for the performance or expression thereof;
  - (ii) ensuring access to the intangible cultural heritage while respecting customary practices governing access to specific aspects of such heritage;
  - (iii) establishing documentation institutions for the intangible cultural heritage and facilitating access to them.

#### **Article 14 – Education, awareness-raising and capacity-building**

Each State Party shall endeavour, by all appropriate means, to:

- (a) ensure recognition of, respect for, and enhancement of the intangible cultural heritage in society, in particular through:
  - (i) educational, awareness-raising and information programmes, aimed at the general public, in particular young people;
  - (ii) specific educational and training programmes within the communities and groups concerned;
  - (iii) capacity-building activities for the safeguarding of the intangible cultural heritage, in particular management and scientific research; and
  - (iv) non-formal means of transmitting knowledge;
- (b) keep the public informed of the dangers threatening such heritage, and of the activities carried out in pursuance of this Convention;
- (c) promote education for the protection of natural spaces and places of memory whose existence is necessary for expressing the intangible cultural heritage.

#### **Article 15 – Participation of communities, groups and individuals**

Within the framework of its safeguarding activities of the intangible cultural heritage, each State Party shall endeavour to ensure the widest possible participation of communities, groups and, where appropriate, individuals that create, maintain and transmit such heritage, and to involve them actively in its management.

## **IV. Safeguarding of the intangible cultural heritage at the international level**

#### **Article 16 – Representative List of the Intangible Cultural Heritage of Humanity**

1. In order to ensure better visibility of the intangible cultural heritage and awareness of its significance, and to encourage dialogue which respects cultural diversity, the Committee, upon the proposal of the States Parties concerned, shall establish, keep up to date and publish a Representative List of the Intangible Cultural Heritage of Humanity.
2. The Committee shall draw up and submit to the General Assembly for approval the criteria for the establishment, updating and publication of this Representative List.

#### **Article 17 – List of Intangible Cultural Heritage in Need of Urgent Safeguarding**

1. With a view to taking appropriate safeguarding measures, the Committee shall establish, keep up to date and publish a List of Intangible Cultural Heritage in Need of Urgent Safeguarding, and shall inscribe such heritage on the List at the request of the State Party concerned.
2. The Committee shall draw up and submit to the General Assembly for approval the criteria for the establishment, updating and publication of this List.
3. In cases of extreme urgency – the objective criteria of which shall be approved by the General Assembly upon the proposal of the Committee – the Committee may inscribe an item of the heritage concerned on the List mentioned in paragraph 1, in consultation with the State Party concerned.

#### **Article 18 – Programmes, projects and activities for the safeguarding of the intangible cultural heritage**

1. On the basis of proposals submitted by States Parties, and in accordance with criteria to be defined by the Committee and approved by the General Assembly, the Committee shall periodically select and promote national, subregional and regional programmes, projects and activities for the safeguarding of the heritage which it considers



best reflect the principles and objectives of this Convention, taking into account the special needs of developing countries.

2. To this end, it shall receive, examine and approve requests for international assistance from States Parties for the preparation of such proposals.
3. The Committee shall accompany the implementation of such projects, programmes and activities by disseminating best practices using means to be determined by it.

## V. International cooperation and assistance

### Article 19 – Cooperation

1. For the purposes of this Convention, international cooperation includes, inter alia, the exchange of information and experience, joint initiatives, and the establishment of a mechanism of assistance to States Parties in their efforts to safeguard the intangible cultural heritage.
2. Without prejudice to the provisions of their national legislation and customary law and practices, the States Parties recognize that the safeguarding of intangible cultural heritage is of general interest to humanity, and to that end undertake to cooperate at the bilateral, subregional, regional and international levels.

### Article 20 – Purposes of international assistance

International assistance may be granted for the following purposes:

- (a) the safeguarding of the heritage inscribed on the List of Intangible Cultural Heritage in Need of Urgent Safeguarding;
- (b) the preparation of inventories in the sense of Articles 11 and 12;
- (c) support for programmes, projects and activities carried out at the national, subregional and regional levels aimed at the safeguarding of the intangible cultural heritage;
- (d) any other purpose the Committee may deem necessary.

### Article 21 – Forms of international assistance

The assistance granted by the Committee to a State Party shall be governed by the operational directives foreseen in Article 7 and by the agreement referred to in Article 24, and may take the following forms:

- (a) studies concerning various aspects of safeguarding;
- (b) the provision of experts and practitioners;
- (c) the training of all necessary staff;
- (d) the elaboration of standard-setting and other measures;
- (e) the creation and operation of infrastructures;
- (f) the supply of equipment and know-how;
- (g) other forms of financial and technical assistance, including, where appropriate, the granting of low-interest loans and donations.

### Article 22 – Conditions governing international assistance

1. The Committee shall establish the procedure for examining requests for international assistance, and shall specify what information shall be included in the requests, such as the measures envisaged and the interventions required, together with an assessment of their cost.
2. In emergencies, requests for assistance shall be examined by the Committee as a matter of priority.
3. In order to reach a decision, the Committee shall undertake such studies and consultations as it deems necessary.

### Article 23 – Requests for international assistance

1. Each State Party may submit to the Committee a request for international assistance for the safeguarding of the intangible cultural heritage present in its territory.
2. Such a request may also be jointly submitted by two or more States Parties.
3. The request shall include the information stipulated in Article 22, paragraph 1, together with the necessary documentation.

### Article 24 – Role of beneficiary States Parties

1. In conformity with the provisions of this Convention, the international assistance granted shall be regulated by means of an agreement between the beneficiary State Party and the Committee.
2. As a general rule, the beneficiary State Party shall, within the limits of its resources, share the cost of the safeguarding measures for which international assistance is provided.

3. The beneficiary State Party shall submit to the Committee a report on the use made of the assistance provided for the safeguarding of the intangible cultural heritage.

## VI. Intangible Cultural Heritage Fund

### Article 25 – Nature and resources of the Fund

1. A “Fund for the Safeguarding of the Intangible Cultural Heritage”, hereinafter referred to as “the Fund”, is hereby established.
2. The Fund shall consist of funds-in-trust established in accordance with the Financial Regulations of UNESCO.
3. The resources of the Fund shall consist of:
  - (a) contributions made by States Parties;
  - (b) funds appropriated for this purpose by the General Conference of UNESCO;
  - (c) contributions, gifts or bequests which may be made by:
    - (i) other States;
    - (ii) organizations and programmes of the United Nations system, particularly the United Nations Development Programme, as well as other international organizations;
    - (iii) public or private bodies or individuals;
  - (d) any interest due on the resources of the Fund;
  - (e) funds raised through collections, and receipts from events organized for the benefit of the Fund;
  - (f) any other resources authorized by the Fund’s regulations, to be drawn up by the Committee.
4. The use of resources by the Committee shall be decided on the basis of guidelines laid down by the General Assembly.
5. The Committee may accept contributions and other forms of assistance for general and specific purposes relating to specific projects, provided that those projects have been approved by the Committee.
6. No political, economic or other conditions which are incompatible with the objectives of this Convention may be attached to contributions made to the Fund.

### Article 26 – Contributions of States Parties to the Fund

1. Without prejudice to any supplementary voluntary contribution, the States Parties to this Convention undertake to pay into the Fund, at least every two years, a contribution, the amount of which, in the form of a uniform percentage applicable to all States, shall be determined by the General Assembly. This decision of the General Assembly shall be taken by a majority of the States Parties present and voting which have not made the declaration referred to in paragraph 2 of this Article. In no case shall the contribution of the State Party exceed 1% of its contribution to the regular budget of UNESCO.
2. However, each State referred to in Article 32 or in Article 33 of this Convention may declare, at the time of the deposit of its instruments of ratification, acceptance, approval or accession, that it shall not be bound by the provisions of paragraph 1 of this Article.
3. A State Party to this Convention which has made the declaration referred to in paragraph 2 of this Article shall endeavour to withdraw the said declaration by notifying the Director-General of UNESCO. However, the withdrawal of the declaration shall not take effect in regard to the contribution due by the State until the date on which the subsequent session of the General Assembly opens.
4. In order to enable the Committee to plan its operations effectively, the contributions of States Parties to this Convention which have made the declaration referred to in paragraph 2 of this Article shall be paid on a regular basis, at least every two years, and should be as close as possible to the contributions they would have owed if they had been bound by the provisions of paragraph 1 of this Article.
5. Any State Party to this Convention which is in arrears with the payment of its compulsory or voluntary contribution for the current year and the calendar year immediately preceding it shall not be eligible as a Member of the Committee; this provision shall not apply to the first election. The term of office of any such State which is already a Member of the Committee shall come to an end at the time of the elections provided for in Article 6 of this Convention.

### **Article 27 – Voluntary supplementary contributions to the Fund**

States Parties wishing to provide voluntary contributions in addition to those foreseen under Article 26 shall inform the Committee, as soon as possible, so as to enable it to plan its operations accordingly.

### **Article 28 – International fund-raising campaigns**

The States Parties shall, insofar as is possible, lend their support to international fund-raising campaigns organized for the benefit of the Fund under the auspices of UNESCO.

## **VII. Reports**

### **Article 29 – Reports by the States Parties**

The States Parties shall submit to the Committee, observing the forms and periodicity to be defined by the Committee, reports on the legislative, regulatory and other measures taken for the implementation of this Convention.

### **Article 30 – Reports by the Committee**

1. On the basis of its activities and the reports by States Parties referred to in Article 29, the Committee shall submit a report to the General Assembly at each of its sessions.
2. The report shall be brought to the attention of the General Conference of UNESCO.

## **VIII. Transitional clause**

### **Article 31 – Relationship to the Proclamation of Masterpieces of the Oral and Intangible Heritage of Humanity**

1. The Committee shall incorporate in the Representative List of the Intangible Cultural Heritage of Humanity the items proclaimed “Masterpieces of the Oral and Intangible Heritage of Humanity” before the entry into force of this Convention.
2. The incorporation of these items in the Representative List of the Intangible Cultural Heritage of Humanity shall in no way prejudice

the criteria for future inscriptions decided upon in accordance with Article 16, paragraph 2.

3. No further Proclamation will be made after the entry into force of this Convention.

## **IX. Final clauses**

### **Article 32 – Ratification, acceptance or approval**

1. This Convention shall be subject to ratification, acceptance or approval by States Members of UNESCO in accordance with their respective constitutional procedures.
2. The instruments of ratification, acceptance or approval shall be deposited with the Director-General of UNESCO.

### **Article 33 – Accession**

1. This Convention shall be open to accession by all States not Members of UNESCO that are invited by the General Conference of UNESCO to accede to it.
2. This Convention shall also be open to accession by territories which enjoy full internal self-government recognized as such by the United Nations, but have not attained full independence in accordance with General Assembly resolution 1514 (XV), and which have competence over the matters governed by this Convention, including the competence to enter into treaties in respect of such matters.
3. The instrument of accession shall be deposited with the Director-General of UNESCO.

### **Article 34 – Entry into force**

This Convention shall enter into force three months after the date of the deposit of the thirtieth instrument of ratification, acceptance, approval or accession, but only with respect to those States that have deposited their respective instruments of ratification, acceptance, approval, or accession on or before that date. It shall enter into force with respect to any other State Party three months after the deposit of its instrument of ratification, acceptance, approval or accession.

### **Article 35 – Federal or non-unitary constitutional systems**

The following provisions shall apply to States Parties which have a federal or non-unitary constitutional system:

- (a) with regard to the provisions of this Convention, the implementation of which comes under the legal jurisdiction of the federal or central legislative power, the obligations of the federal or central government shall be the same as for those States Parties which are not federal States;
- (b) with regard to the provisions of this Convention, the implementation of which comes under the jurisdiction of individual constituent States, countries, provinces or cantons which are not obliged by the constitutional system of the federation to
- (c) take legislative measures, the federal government shall inform the competent authorities of such States, countries, provinces or cantons of the said provisions, with its recommendation for their adoption.

### **Article 36 – Denunciation**

1. Each State Party may denounce this Convention.
2. The denunciation shall be notified by an instrument in writing, deposited with the Director-General of UNESCO.
3. The denunciation shall take effect twelve months after the receipt of the instrument of denunciation. It shall in no way affect the financial obligations of the denouncing State Party until the date on which the withdrawal takes effect.

### **Article 37 – Depositary functions**

The Director-General of UNESCO, as the Depositary of this Convention, shall inform the States Members of the Organization, the States not Members of the Organization referred to in Article 33, as well as the United Nations, of the deposit of all the instruments of ratification, acceptance, approval or accession provided for in Articles 32 and 33, and of the denunciations provided for in Article 36.

### **Article 38 – Amendments**

1. A State Party may, by written communication addressed to the Director-General, propose amendments to this Convention. The Director-

General shall circulate such communication to all States Parties. If, within six months from the date of the circulation of the communication, not less than one half of the States Parties reply favourably to the request, the Director-General shall present such proposal to the next session of the General Assembly for discussion and possible adoption.

2. Amendments shall be adopted by a two-thirds majority of States Parties present and voting.
3. Once adopted, amendments to this Convention shall be submitted for ratification, acceptance, approval or accession to the States Parties.
4. Amendments shall enter into force, but solely with respect to the States Parties that have ratified, accepted, approved or acceded to them, three months after the deposit of the instruments referred to in paragraph 3 of this Article by two-thirds of the States Parties. Thereafter, for each State Party that ratifies, accepts, approves or accedes to an amendment, the said amendment shall enter into force three months after the date of deposit by that State Party of its instrument of ratification, acceptance, approval or accession.
5. The procedure set out in paragraphs 3 and 4 shall not apply to amendments to Article 5 concerning the number of States Members of the Committee. These amendments shall enter into force at the time they are adopted.
6. A State which becomes a Party to this Convention after the entry into force of amendments in conformity with paragraph 4 of this Article shall, failing an expression of different intention, be considered:
  - (a) as a Party to this Convention as so amended; and
  - (b) as a Party to the unamended Convention in relation to any State Party not bound by the amendments.

### **Article 39 – Authoritative texts**

This Convention has been drawn up in Arabic, Chinese, English, French, Russian and Spanish, the six texts being equally authoritative.

### **Article 40 – Registration**

In conformity with Article 102 of the Charter of the United Nations, this Convention shall be registered with the Secretariat of the United Nations at the request of the Director-General of UNESCO.

<https://ich.unesco.org/en/convention>









**VICTORIA FALLS 2003**

# **ICOMOS CHARTER- PRINCIPLES FOR THE ANALYSIS, CONSERVATION AND STRUCTURAL RESTORATION OF ARCHITECTURAL HERITAGE (2003)**

Ratified by the ICOMOS 14th General Assembly in Victoria Falls, Zimbabwe, in 2003

## **PRINCIPLES**

### **PURPOSE OF THE DOCUMENT**

Structures of architectural heritage, by their very nature and history (material and assembly), present a number of challenges in diagnosis and restoration that limit the application of modern legal codes and building standards. Recommendations are desirable and necessary to both ensure rational methods of analysis and repair methods appropriate to the cultural context.

These Recommendations are intended to be useful to all those involved in conservation and restoration problems, but cannot in anyway replace specific knowledge acquired from cultural and scientific texts.

The Recommendations presented in the complete document are in two sections: Principles, where the basic concepts of conservation are presented; Guidelines, where the rules and methodology that a designer should follow are discussed. Only the Principles have the status of an approved/ratified ICOMOS document.

The guidelines are available in English in a separate document.



# PRINCIPLES

## 1 GENERAL CRITERIA

- 1.1 Conservation, reinforcement and restoration of architectural heritage requires a multi-disciplinary approach.
- 1.2 Value and authenticity of architectural heritage cannot be based on fixed criteria because the respect due to all cultures also requires that its physical heritage be considered within the cultural context to which it belongs.
- 1.3 The value of architectural heritage is not only in its appearance, but also in the integrity of all its components as a unique product of the specific building technology of its time. In particular the removal of the inner structures maintaining only the façades does not fit the conservation criteria.
- 1.4 When any change of use or function is proposed, all the conservation requirements and safety conditions have to be carefully taken into account.
- 1.5 Restoration of the structure in Architecture Heritage is not an end in itself but a means to an end, which is the building as a whole.
- 1.6 The peculiarity of heritage structures, with their complex history, requires the organisation of studies and proposals in precise steps that are similar to those used in medicine. Anamnesis, diagnosis, therapy and controls, corresponding respectively to the searches for significant data and information, individuation of the causes of damage and decay, choice of the remedial measures and control of the efficiency of the interventions. In order to achieve cost effectiveness and minimal impact on architectural heritage using funds available in a rational way; it is usually necessary that the study repeats these steps in an iterative process.
- 1.7 No action should be undertaken without having ascertained the achievable benefit and harm to the architectural heritage, except in cases where urgent safeguard measures are necessary to avoid the imminent collapse of the structures (e.g. after seismic damages); those urgent measures, however, should when possible avoid modifying the fabric in an irreversible way.

## 2 RESEARCHES AND DIAGNOSIS

- 2.1 Usually a multidisciplinary team, to be determined in relation to the type and the scale of the problem, should work together from the first steps of a study - as in the initial survey of the site and the preparation of the investigation programme.
- 2.2 Data and information should first be processed approximately, to establish a more comprehensive plan of activities in proportion to the real problems of the structures.
- 2.3 A full understanding of the structural and material characteristics is required in conservation practice. Information is essential on the structure in its original and earlier states, on the techniques that were used in the construction, on the alterations and their effects, on the phenomena that have occurred, and, finally, on its present state.
- 2.4 In archaeological sites specific problems may be posed because structures have to be stabilised during excavation when knowledge is not yet complete. The structural responses to a “rediscovered” building may be completely different from those to an “exposed” building. Urgent site-structural-solutions, required to stabilise the structure as it is being excavated, should not compromise the complete building’s concept form and use.
- 2.5 Diagnosis is based on historical, qualitative and quantitative approaches; the qualitative approach being mainly based on direct observation of the structural damage and material decay as well as historical and archaeological research, and the quantitative approach mainly on material and structural tests, monitoring and structural analysis.
- 2.6 Before making a decision on structural intervention it is indispensable to determine first the causes of damage and decay, and then to evaluate the safety level of the structure.
- 2.7 The safety evaluation, which is the last step in the diagnosis, where the need for treatment measures is determined, should reconcile qualitative with quantitative analysis: direct observation, historical research, structural analysis and, if it is the case, experiments and tests.

- 2.8 Often the application of the same safety levels as in the design of new buildings requires excessive, if not impossible, measures. In these cases specific analyses and appropriate considerations may justify different approaches to safety.
- 2.9 All aspects related to the acquired information, the diagnosis including the safety evaluation, and the decision to intervene should be described in an “EXPLANATORY REPORT”.

### 3 REMEDIAL MEASURES AND CONTROLS

- 3.1 Therapy should address root causes rather than symptoms.
- 3.2 The best therapy is preventive maintenance.
- 3.3 Safety evaluation and an understanding of the significance of the structure should be the basis for conservation and reinforcement measures.
- 3.4 No actions should be undertaken without demonstrating that they are indispensable.
- 3.5 Each intervention should be in proportion to the safety objectives set, thus keeping intervention to the minimum to guarantee safety and durability with the least harm to heritage values.
- 3.6 The design of intervention should be based on a clear understanding of the kinds of actions that were the cause of the damage and decay as well as those that are taken into account for the analysis of the structure after intervention; because the design will be dependent upon them.
- 3.7 The choice between “traditional” and “innovative” techniques should be weighed up on a case-by-case basis and preference given to those that are least invasive and most compatible with heritage values, bearing in mind safety and durability requirements.
- 3.8 At times the difficulty of evaluating the real safety levels and the possible benefits of interventions may suggest “an observational method”, i.e. an incremental approach, starting from a minimum level of intervention, with the possible subsequent adoption of a series of supplementary or corrective measures.
- 3.9 Where possible, any measures adopted should be “reversible” so that they can be removed and replaced with more suitable measures when new knowledge is acquired. Where they are not completely reversible, interventions should not limit further interventions.
- 3.10 The characteristics of materials used in restoration work (in particular new materials) and their compatibility with existing materials should be fully established. This must include long-term impacts, so that undesirable side-effects are avoided.
- 3.11 The distinguishing qualities of the structure and its environment, in their original or earlier states, should not be destroyed.
- 3.12 Each intervention should, as far as possible, respect the concept, techniques and historical value of the original or earlier states of the structure and leaves evidence that can be recognised in the future.
- 3.13 Intervention should be the result of an overall integrated plan that gives due weight to the different aspects of architecture, structure, installations and functionality.
- 3.14 The removal or alteration of any historic material or distinctive architectural features should be avoided whenever possible.
- 3.15 Deteriorated structures whenever possible should be repaired rather than replaced.
- 3.16 Imperfections and alterations, when they have become part of the history of the structure, should be maintained so far so they do not compromise the safety requirements.
- 3.17 Dismantling and reassembly should only be undertaken as an optional measure required by the very nature of the materials and structure when conservation by other means impossible, or harmful.
- 3.18 Provisional safeguard systems used during the intervention should show their purpose and function without creating any harm to heritage values.
- 3.19 Any proposal for intervention must be accompanied by a programme of control to be carried out, as far as possible, while the work is in progress.
- 3.20 Measures that are impossible to control during execution should not be allowed.

- 3.21 Checks and monitoring during and after the intervention should be carried out to ascertain the efficacy of the results.
- 3.22 All the activities of checking and monitoring should be documented and kept as part of the history of the structure.





A photograph of several terracotta warrior statues from the Terracotta Army in Xi'an, China. The statues are arranged in a line, facing right, and are partially buried in a trench. They are wearing traditional Chinese armor and have distinct facial features.

**XI'AN 2005**

## **XI'AN DECLARATION ON THE CONSERVATION OF THE SETTING OF HERITAGE STRUCTURES, SITES AND AREAS**

Adopted in Xi'an, China by the 15th General Assembly of ICOMOS on 21 October 2005

Final version - 22.10.2005

### **Preamble**

Meeting in the ancient city of Xi'an (China) on 17-21<sup>st</sup> October 2005, at the invitation of ICOMOS China on the occasion of 15<sup>th</sup> General Assembly of ICOMOS and the celebrations marking the 40<sup>th</sup> anniversary of its longstanding endeavour to ensure the safeguard and conservation of the World's cultural heritage as part of its sustainable and human development;

Benefiting from the broad range of cases and reflections shared during the General Assembly's International Symposium on *Monuments and Sites in their Settings – Conserving Cultural Heritage in Changing Townscapes and Landscapes* and learning from a broad range of experiences from China and world-wide authorities, institutions and specialists in providing adequate care and management of heritage structures, sites and areas such as historic cities, landscapes, seascapes, cultural routes and archaeological sites in the context of accelerated change and development;

Taking note of the international and professional interest for the conservation of the settings of monuments and sites as expressed in the *International Charter for the Conservation and Restoration of Monuments and Sites – the Venice Charter* (1964) – and in the many texts it has inspired, particularly through ICOMOS National and International Committees, as well as the *Nara Document on Authenticity* (1994) and conclusions and recommendations of international meetings like the *Hoi An Declaration on the Conservation of Historic Districts in Asia* (2003), the *Declaration on the Recovery of Bam's Cultural Heritage* (2004), and the *Seoul Declaration on Tourism in Asia's Historic Towns and Areas* (2005);

Noting the references to the concept of setting in UNESCO conventions and recommendations like the *Recommendation concerning the Safeguarding of Beauty and Character of Landscapes and Sites* (1962), the *Recommendation concerning the Preservation of Cultural Property Endangered by Public or Private Works* (1968), the *Recommendation concerning the Safeguarding and Contemporary Role of Historic Areas* (1976), the *Convention for the Safeguarding of the Intangible Cultural Heritage*, (2003) and more specifically the *World Heritage Convention* (1972) and its Operational Guidelines, where setting is listed as an attribute of authenticity and as needing protection through the establishment of buffer zones, and the ongoing opportunity this brings for international and interdisciplinary co-operation between ICOMOS, UNESCO and other partners and for developments on topics like authenticity or the conservation of historic urban landscapes expressed in the *Vienna Memorandum* (2005).

Stressing the need to address adequately the rapid or incremental transformation of cities, landscapes and heritage routes which result from changes in lifestyles, agriculture, development, tourism or large-scale disasters of natural or human origin, and to recognise, protect and sustain adequately the meaningful presence of heritage structures, sites and areas in their settings as a way to reduce the threat these transformation processes constitute against the cultural heritage in the full richness of its authenticity, meaning, values, integrity and diversity,

Participants of the 15<sup>th</sup> General Assembly of ICOMOS adopt the following Declaration of principles and recommendations, addressing it to intergovernmental and non-governmental organisations, national and local authorities and all institutions and specialists able to contribute through legislation, policies, planning processes and management to better protect and conserve the world's heritage structures, sites and areas in their settings.

## Acknowledge the contribution of setting to the significance of heritage monuments, sites and areas

1. **The setting of a heritage structure, site or area is defined as the immediate and extended environment that is part of, or contributes to, its significance and distinctive character.**

Beyond the physical and visual aspects, the setting includes interaction with the natural environment; past or present social or spiritual practices, customs, traditional knowledge, use or activities and other forms of intangible cultural heritage aspects that created and form the space as well as the current and dynamic cultural, social and economic context.

2. **Heritage structures, sites or areas of various scales, including individual buildings or designed spaces, historic cities or urban landscapes, landscapes, seascapes, cultural routes and archaeological sites, derive their significance and distinctive character from their perceived social and spiritual, historic, artistic, aesthetic, natural, scientific, or other cultural values. They also derive their significance and distinctive character from their meaningful relationships with their physical, visual, spiritual and other cultural context and settings.**

These relationships can be the result of a conscious and planned creative act, spiritual belief, historical events, use or a cumulative and organic process over time through cultural traditions.

## Understand, document and interpret the settings in diverse contexts

3. **Understanding, documenting and interpreting the setting is essential to defining and appreciating the heritage significance of any structure, site or area.**

The definition of setting requires an understanding of the history, evolution and character of the surrounds of the heritage resource. Defining the setting is a process of considering multiple factors to include the character of the arrival experience and the heritage resource itself.

**4. Understanding the setting in an inclusive way requires a multi-disciplinary approach and the use of diverse information sources.**

Sources include formal records and archives, artistic and scientific descriptions, oral history and traditional knowledge, the perspectives of local and associated communities as well as the analysis of views and vistas.

Cultural traditions, rituals, spiritual practices and concepts as well as history, topography, natural environment values, use and other factors contribute to create the full range of a setting's tangible and intangible values and dimensions. The definition of settings should carefully articulate the character and values of the setting and its relationship to the heritage resource.

## **Develop planning tools and practices to conserve and manage settings**

**5. The implementation of effective planning and legislative tools, policies, strategies and practices to sustainably manage settings requires consistency and continuity in application, whilst reflecting the local or cultural contexts in which they function.**

Tools to manage settings include specific legislative measures, professional training, development of comprehensive conservation and management plans or systems, and use of adequate heritage impact assessment methods.

**6. Legislation, regulation and guidelines for the protection, conservation and management of heritage structures, sites and areas should provide for the establishment of a protection or buffer zone around them that reflects and conserves the significance and distinctive character of their setting.**

**7. Planning instruments should include provisions to effectively control the impact of incremental or rapid change on settings.**

Significant skylines, sight lines and adequate distance between any new public or private development and heritage structures, sites and areas are key aspects to assess in the prevention of inappropriate visual and spatial encroachments or land use in significant settings.

**8. Heritage impact assessments should be required for all new development impacting on the significance of heritage structures, sites and areas and on their settings.**

Development within the setting of heritage structures, sites and areas should positively interpret and contribute to its significance and distinctive character.

## **Monitor and manage change affecting settings**

**9. The rate of change and the individual and cumulative impacts of change and transformation on the settings of heritage structures, sites and areas is an ongoing process which must be monitored and managed.**

Incremental as well as rapid transformation of the urban or rural landscapes, the ways of life, the economies or the natural environment can substantially or irretrievably affect the authentic contribution that the setting makes to the significance of a heritage structure, site or area.

**10. Change to the setting of heritage structures, sites and areas should be managed to retain cultural significance and distinctive character.**

Managing change to the setting of heritage structures, sites and areas need not necessarily prevent or obstruct change.

**11. Monitoring should define approaches and actions to appreciate and measure as well as prevent or remedy decay, loss of significance or trivialisation and propose improvement in conservation, management and interpretation practices.**

Qualitative and quantifiable indicators should be developed to assess the contribution of the setting to the significance of a heritage structure, site or area.



Indicators for monitoring should cover physical aspects such as intrusion on views, skylines or open spaces, air pollution, sound pollution, as well as economic, social and cultural dimensions.

## **Work with local, interdisciplinary and international communities for co-operation and awareness in conserving and managing settings**

### **12. Co-operation and engagement with associated and local communities is essential as part of developing sustainable strategies for the conservation and management of settings.**

Inter-disciplinary engagement should be encouraged as standard practice in conserving and managing settings. Relevant cultural heritage fields include architecture, urban and regional planning, landscape planning, engineering, anthropology, history, archaeology, ethnology, curation and archives.

Co-operation with institutions and specialists in the field of natural heritage should also be encouraged as an integral part of good practice for the identification, protection, presentation and interpretation of heritage structures, sites or areas in their setting.

### **13. Professional training, interpretation, community education and public awareness should be encouraged to support such co-operation and sharing of knowledge as well as to promote conservation goals, improve the efficiency of the protection tools, management plans and other instruments.**

The experience, knowledge and tools developed through the conservation of individual heritage structures, sites and areas should be extended to complement the management of their setting.

Economic resources should be allocated to the research, assessment and strategic planning of the conservation and management of setting of heritage structures, sites and areas.

Awareness of the significance of the setting in its various dimensions is the shared responsibility of professionals, institutions, associated and local communities, who should take into account the tangible and intangible dimensions of settings when making decisions.

Adopted in Xi'an (China) on the 21<sup>st</sup> October, 2005.

<https://www.icomos.org/en/resources/charters-and-texts>





# **COUNCIL OF EUROPE FRAMEWORK CONVENTION ON THE VALUE OF CULTURAL HERITAGE FOR SOCIETY**

Faro, 27.X.2005

## **Preamble**

The member States of the Council of Europe, Signatories hereto,

Considering that one of the aims of the Council of Europe is to achieve greater unity between its members for the purpose of safeguarding and fostering the ideals and principles, founded upon respect for human rights, democracy and the rule of law, which are their common heritage;

Recognising the need to put people and human values at the centre of an enlarged and cross-disciplinary concept of cultural heritage;

Emphasising the value and potential of cultural heritage wisely used as a resource for sustainable development and quality of life in a constantly evolving society;

Recognising that every person has a right to engage with the cultural heritage of their choice, while respecting the rights and freedoms of others, as an aspect of the right freely to participate in cultural life enshrined in the United Nations Universal Declaration of Human Rights (1948) and guaranteed by the International Covenant on Economic, Social and Cultural Rights (1966);

Convinced of the need to involve everyone in society in the ongoing process of defining and managing cultural heritage;

Convinced of the soundness of the principle of heritage policies and educational initiatives which treat all cultural heritages equitably and so promote dialogue among cultures and religions;



Referring to the various instruments of the Council of Europe, in particular the European Cultural Convention (1954), the Convention for the Protection of the Architectural Heritage of Europe (1985), the European Convention on the Protection of the Archaeological Heritage (1992, revised) and the European Landscape Convention (2000);

Convinced of the importance of creating a pan-European framework for co-operation in the dynamic process of putting these principles into effect.

Have agreed as follows:

## Section I – Aims, definitions and principles

### Article 1 – Aims of the Convention

The Parties to this Convention agree to:

- a recognise that rights relating to cultural heritage are inherent in the right to participate in cultural life, as defined in the Universal Declaration of Human Rights;
- b recognise individual and collective responsibility towards cultural heritage;
- c emphasise that the conservation of cultural heritage and its sustainable use have human development and quality of life as their goal;
- d take the necessary steps to apply the provisions of this Convention concerning:
  - the role of cultural heritage in the construction of a peaceful and democratic society, and in the processes of sustainable development and the promotion of cultural diversity;
  - greater synergy of competencies among all the public, institutional and private actors concerned.

---

\* The Treaty of Lisbon amending the Treaty on European Union and the Treaty establishing the European Community entered into force on 1 December 2009. As a consequence, as from that date, any reference to the European Economic Community shall be read as the European Union.

### Article 2 – Definitions

For the purposes of this Convention,

- a cultural heritage is a group of resources inherited from the past which people identify, independently of ownership, as a reflection and expression of their constantly evolving values, beliefs, knowledge and traditions. It includes all aspects of the environment resulting from the interaction between people and places through time;
- b a heritage community consists of people who value specific aspects of cultural heritage which they wish, within the framework of public action, to sustain and transmit to future generations.

### Article 3 – The common heritage of Europe

The Parties agree to promote an understanding of the common heritage of Europe, which consists of:

- a all forms of cultural heritage in Europe which together constitute a shared source of remembrance, understanding, identity, cohesion and creativity, and
- b the ideals, principles and values, derived from the experience gained through progress and past conflicts, which foster the development of a peaceful and stable society, founded on respect for human rights, democracy and the rule of law.

### Article 4 – Rights and responsibilities relating to cultural heritage

The Parties recognise that:

- a everyone, alone or collectively, has the right to benefit from the cultural heritage and to contribute towards its enrichment;
- b everyone, alone or collectively, has the responsibility to respect the cultural heritage of others as much as their own heritage, and consequently the common heritage of Europe;
- c exercise of the right to cultural heritage may be subject only to those restrictions which are necessary in a democratic society for the protection of the public interest and the rights and freedoms of others.

### Article 5 – Cultural heritage law and policies

The Parties undertake to:

- a recognise the public interest associated with elements of the cultural heritage in accordance with their importance to society;

- b enhance the value of the cultural heritage through its identification, study, interpretation, protection, conservation and presentation;
- c ensure, in the specific context of each Party, that legislative provisions exist for exercising the right to cultural heritage as defined in Article 4;
- d foster an economic and social climate which supports participation in cultural heritage activities;
- e promote cultural heritage protection as a central factor in the mutually supporting objectives of sustainable development, cultural diversity and contemporary creativity;
- f recognise the value of cultural heritage situated on territories under their jurisdiction, regardless of its origin;
- g formulate integrated strategies to facilitate the implementation of the provisions of this Convention.

#### **Article 6 – Effects of the Convention**

No provision of this Convention shall be interpreted so as to:

- a limit or undermine the human rights and fundamental freedoms which may be safeguarded by international instruments, in particular, the Universal Declaration of Human Rights and the Convention for the Protection of Human Rights and Fundamental Freedoms;
- b affect more favourable provisions concerning cultural heritage and environment contained in other national or international legal instruments;
- c create enforceable rights.

## **Section II – Contribution of cultural heritage to society and human development**

#### **Article 7 – Cultural heritage and dialogue**

The Parties undertake, through the public authorities and other competent bodies, to:

- a encourage reflection on the ethics and methods of presentation of the cultural heritage, as well as respect for diversity of interpretations;

- b establish processes for conciliation to deal equitably with situations where contradictory values are placed on the same cultural heritage by different communities;
- c develop knowledge of cultural heritage as a resource to facilitate peaceful co-existence by promoting trust and mutual understanding with a view to resolution and prevention of conflicts;
- d integrate these approaches into all aspects of lifelong education and training.

#### **Article 8 – Environment, heritage and quality of life**

The Parties undertake to utilise all heritage aspects of the cultural environment to:

- a enrich the processes of economic, political, social and cultural development and land-use planning, resorting to cultural heritage impact assessments and adopting mitigation strategies where necessary;
- b promote an integrated approach to policies concerning cultural, biological, geological and landscape diversity to achieve a balance between these elements;
- c reinforce social cohesion by fostering a sense of shared responsibility towards the places in which people live;
- d promote the objective of quality in contemporary additions to the environment without endangering its cultural values.

#### **Article 9 – Sustainable use of the cultural heritage**

To sustain the cultural heritage, the Parties undertake to:

- a promote respect for the integrity of the cultural heritage by ensuring that decisions about change include an understanding of the cultural values involved;
- b define and promote principles for sustainable management, and to encourage maintenance;
- c ensure that all general technical regulations take account of the specific conservation requirements of cultural heritage;
- d promote the use of materials, techniques and skills based on tradition, and explore their potential for contemporary applications;

- e promote high-quality work through systems of professional qualifications and accreditation for individuals, businesses and institutions.

#### **Article 10 – Cultural heritage and economic activity**

In order to make full use of the potential of the cultural heritage as a factor in sustainable economic development, the Parties undertake to:

- a raise awareness and utilise the economic potential of the cultural heritage;
- b take into account the specific character and interests of the cultural heritage when devising economic policies; and
- c ensure that these policies respect the integrity of the cultural heritage without compromising its inherent values.

### **Section III – Shared responsibility for cultural heritage and public participation**

#### **Article 11 – The organisation of public responsibilities for cultural heritage**

In the management of the cultural heritage, the Parties undertake to:

- a promote an integrated and well-informed approach by public authorities in all sectors and at all levels;
- b develop the legal, financial and professional frameworks which make possible joint action by public authorities, experts, owners, investors, businesses, non-governmental organisations and civil society;
- c develop innovative ways for public authorities to co-operate with other actors;
- d respect and encourage voluntary initiatives which complement the roles of public authorities;
- e encourage non-governmental organisations concerned with heritage conservation to act in the public interest.

#### **Article 12 – Access to cultural heritage and democratic participation**

The Parties undertake to:

- a encourage everyone to participate in:

- the process of identification, study, interpretation, protection, conservation and presentation of the cultural heritage ;
  - public reflection and debate on the opportunities and challenges which the cultural heritage represents;
- b take into consideration the value attached by each heritage community to the cultural heritage with which it identifies;
  - c recognise the role of voluntary organisations both as partners in activities and as constructive critics of cultural heritage policies;
  - d take steps to improve access to the heritage, especially among young people and the disadvantaged, in order to raise awareness about its value, the need to maintain and preserve it, and the benefits which may be derived from it.

#### **Article 13 – Cultural heritage and knowledge**

The Parties undertake to:

- a facilitate the inclusion of the cultural heritage dimension at all levels of education, not necessarily as a subject of study in its own right, but as a fertile source for studies in other subjects;
- b strengthen the link between cultural heritage education and vocational training;
- c encourage interdisciplinary research on cultural heritage, heritage communities, the environment and their inter-relationship;
- d encourage continuous professional training and the exchange of knowledge and skills, both within and outside the educational system.

#### **Article 14 – Cultural heritage and the information society**

The Parties undertake to develop the use of digital technology to enhance access to cultural heritage and the benefits which derive from it, by:

- a encouraging initiatives which promote the quality of contents and endeavour to secure diversity of languages and cultures in the information society;
- b supporting internationally compatible standards for the study, conservation, enhancement and security of cultural heritage, whilst combating illicit trafficking in cultural property;

- c seeking to resolve obstacles to access to information relating to cultural heritage, particularly for educational purposes, whilst protecting intellectual property rights;
- d recognising that the creation of digital contents related to the heritage should not prejudice the conservation of the existing heritage.

## Section IV – Monitoring and co-operation

### Article 15 – Undertakings of the Parties

The Parties undertake to:

- a develop, through the Council of Europe, a monitoring function covering legislations, policies and practices concerning cultural heritage, consistent with the principles established by this Convention;
- b maintain, develop and contribute data to a shared information system, accessible to the public, which facilitates assessment of how each Party fulfils its commitments under this Convention.

### Article 16 – Monitoring mechanism

- a The Committee of Ministers, pursuant to Article 17 of the Statute of the Council of Europe, shall nominate an appropriate committee or specify an existing committee to monitor the application of the Convention, which will be authorised to make rules for the conduct of its business;
- b The nominated committee shall:
  - establish rules of procedure as necessary;
  - manage the shared information system referred to in Article 15, maintaining an overview of the means by which each commitment under this Convention is met;
  - at the request of one or more Parties, give an advisory opinion on any question relating to the interpretation of the Convention, taking into consideration all Council of Europe legal instruments;
  - on the initiative of one or more Parties, undertake an evaluation of any aspect of their implementation of the Convention;

- foster the trans-sectoral application of this Convention by collaborating with other committees and participating in other initiatives of the Council of Europe;
- report to the Committee of Ministers on its activities.

The committee may involve experts and observers in its work.

### Article 17 – Co-operation in follow-up activities

The Parties undertake to co-operate with each other and through the Council of Europe in pursuing the aims and principles of this Convention, and especially in promoting recognition of the common heritage of Europe, by:

- a putting in place collaborative strategies to address priorities identified through the monitoring process;
- b fostering multilateral and transfrontier activities, and developing networks for regional co-operation in order to implement these strategies;
- c exchanging, developing, codifying and assuring the dissemination of good practices;
- d informing the public about the aims and implementation of this Convention

Any Parties may, by mutual agreement, make financial arrangements to facilitate international co-operation.

## Section V – Final clauses

### Article 18 – Signature and entry into force

- a This Convention shall be open for signature by the member States of the Council of Europe.
- b It shall be subject to ratification, acceptance or approval. Instruments of ratification, acceptance or approval shall be deposited with the Secretary General of the Council of Europe.
- c This Convention shall enter into force on the first day of the month following the expiration of a period of three months after the date on which ten member States of the Council of Europe have expressed



their consent to be bound by the Convention in accordance with the provisions of the preceding paragraph.

- d In respect of any signatory State which subsequently expresses its consent to be bound by it, this Convention shall enter into force on the first day of the month following the expiration of a period of three months after the date of deposit of the instrument of ratification, acceptance or approval.

#### **Article 19 – Accession**

- a After the entry into force of this Convention, the Committee of Ministers of the Council of Europe may invite any State not a member of the Council of Europe, and the European Community, to accede to the Convention by a decision taken by the majority provided for in Article 20.d of the Statute of the Council of Europe and by the unanimous vote of the representatives of the Contracting States entitled to sit on the Committee of Ministers.
- b In respect of any acceding State, or the European Community in the event of its accession, this Convention shall enter into force on the first day of the month following the expiration of a period of three months after the date of deposit of the instrument of accession with the Secretary General of the Council of Europe.

#### **Article 20 – Territorial application**

- a Any State may, at the time of signature or when depositing its instrument of ratification, acceptance, approval or accession, specify the territory or territories to which this Convention shall apply.
- b Any State may, at any later date, by a declaration addressed to the Secretary General of the Council of Europe, extend the application of this Convention to any other territory specified in the declaration. In respect of such territory, the Convention shall enter into force on the first day of the month following the expiration of a period of three months after the date of receipt of such declaration by the Secretary General.
- c Any declaration made under the two preceding paragraphs may, in respect of any territory specified in such declaration, be withdrawn by a notification addressed to the Secretary General. The withdrawal

shall become effective on the first day of the month following the expiration of a period of six months after the date of receipt of such notification by the Secretary General.

#### **Article 21 – Denunciation**

- a Any Party may, at any time, denounce this Convention by means of a notification addressed to the Secretary General of the Council of Europe.
- b Such denunciation shall become effective on the first day of the month following the expiration of a period of six months after the date of receipt of the notification by the Secretary General.

#### **Article 22 – Amendments**

- a Any Party, and the committee mentioned in Article 16, may propose amendments to this Convention.
- b Any proposal for amendment shall be notified to the Secretary General of the Council of Europe, who shall communicate it to the member States of the Council of Europe, to the other Parties, and to any non-member State and the European Community invited to accede to this Convention in accordance with the provisions of Article 19.
- c The committee shall examine any amendment proposed and submit the text adopted by a majority of three-quarters of the Parties' representatives to the Committee of Ministers for adoption. Following its adoption by the Committee of Ministers by the majority provided for in Article 20.d of the Statute of the Council of Europe, and by the unanimous vote of the States Parties entitled to hold seats in the Committee of Ministers, the text shall be forwarded to the Parties for acceptance.
- d Any amendment shall enter into force in respect of the Parties which have accepted it, on the first day of the month following the expiry of a period of three months after the date on which ten member States of the Council of Europe have informed the Secretary General of their acceptance. In respect of any Party which subsequently accepts it, such amendment shall enter into force on the first day of the month following the expiry of a period of three months after the date on which the said Party has informed the Secretary General of its acceptance.

### **Article 23 – Notifications**

The Secretary General of the Council of Europe shall notify the member States of the Council of Europe, any State which has acceded or been invited to accede to this Convention, and the European Community having acceded or been invited to accede, of:

- a any signature;
- b the deposit of any instrument of ratification, acceptance, approval or accession;
- c any date of entry into force of this Convention in accordance with the provisions of Articles 18, 19 and 20;
- d any amendment proposed to this Convention in accordance with the provisions of Article 22, as well as its date of entry into force;
- e any other act, declaration, notification or communication relating to this Convention.

In witness whereof the undersigned, being duly authorised thereto, have signed this Convention.

Done at Faro, this 27th day of October 2005, in English and in French, both texts being equally authentic, in a single copy which shall be deposited in the archives of the Council of Europe. The Secretary General of the Council of Europe shall transmit certified copies to each member State of the Council of Europe and to any State or the European Community invited to accede to it.

<https://www.coe.int/en/web/conventions/full-list/-/conventions/rms/0900001680083746>









**QUEBECK 2008**

## **THE ICOMOS CHARTER ON CULTURAL ROUTES**

Prepared by the International Scientific Committee on Cultural Routes (CIIC) of ICOMOS

Ratified by the 16th General Assembly of ICOMOS, Québec (Canada), on 4 October 2008

### **Preamble**

As a result of the development of the sciences of conservation of cultural heritage, the new concept of Cultural Routes shows the evolution of ideas with respect to the vision of cultural properties, as well as the growing importance of values related to their setting and territorial scale, and reveals the macrostructure of heritage on different levels. This concept introduces a model for a new ethics of conservation that considers these values as a common heritage that goes beyond national borders, and which requires joint efforts. By respecting the intrinsic value of each individual element, the Cultural Route recognizes and emphasizes the value of all of its elements as substantive parts of a whole. It also helps to illustrate the contemporary social conception of cultural heritage values as a resource for sustainable social and economic development.

This more extensive notion of cultural heritage requires new approaches to its treatment within a much wider context in order to describe and protect its significant relationships directly associated with its natural, cultural and historical setting. Within this advance, the concept of the Cultural Route is innovative, complex and multidimensional. It introduces and represents a qualitatively new approach to the theory and practice of conservation of the cultural heritage.

Cultural Routes represent interactive, dynamic, and evolving processes of human intercultural links that reflect the rich diversity of the contributions of different peoples to cultural heritage.

Though Cultural Routes have resulted historically from both peaceful and hostile encounters, they present a number of shared dimensions which transcend their original functions, offering an exceptional setting for a culture of peace based on the ties of shared history as well as the tolerance, respect, and appreciation for cultural diversity that characterize the communities involved.

The consideration of Cultural Routes as a new concept or category does not conflict nor overlap with other categories or types of cultural properties—monuments, cities, cultural landscapes, industrial heritage, etc.—that may exist within the orbit of a given Cultural Route. It simply includes them within a joint system which enhances their significance. This integrated, interdisciplinary and shared framework creates new relationships among them by means of an innovative scientific perspective that provides a multilateral, more complete, and more accurate vision of history. This approach stimulates not only understanding and communication among the peoples of the world, but also increases cooperation to preserve cultural heritage.

The innovation introduced by the concept of “Cultural Routes” reveals the heritage content of a specific phenomenon of human mobility and exchange that developed via communication routes that facilitated their flow and which were used or deliberately served a concrete and peculiar purpose. A Cultural Route can be a road that was expressly created to serve this purpose or a route that takes advantage either totally or partially of preexisting roads used for different purposes. But beyond its character as a way of communication or transport, its existence and significance as a Cultural Route can only be explained by its use for such specific purpose throughout a long period of history and by having generated heritage values and cultural properties associated to it which reflect reciprocal influences between different cultural groups as a result of its own peculiar dynamics.

Therefore, Cultural Routes are not simple ways of communication and transport which may include cultural properties and connect different peoples, but special historic phenomena that cannot be created by applying one’s imagination and will to the establishment of a set of associated cultural assets that happen to possess features in common.

Cultural Routes have sometimes arisen as a project planned a priori by the human will which had sufficient power to undertake a specific purpose (for example, the Incan and the Roman Empire Routes). On other occasions, they are the result of a long evolutionary process in which the collective interventions of different human factors coincide and are channeled towards a common purpose (such as in the Route to Santiago, the African trade caravan routes, or the Silk Route). In both cases, they are processes arising from the human will to achieve a specific objective.

Given the cultural richness and variety of both the interrelationships and the characteristic assets directly associated with the reason for the existence of Cultural Routes (such as monuments, archaeological remains, historic towns, vernacular architecture, intangible, industrial and technological heritage, public works, cultural and natural landscapes, transportation means and other examples of the application of specific knowledge and technical skills), their study and management requires a multidisciplinary approach that illustrates and reinvigorates scientific hypotheses and stimulates increased historic, cultural, technical and artistic knowledge.

## Objectives of the Charter

- To establish the basic principles and methods of research specific to the category of Cultural Route as they relate to other previously established and studied categories of cultural heritage assets.
- To propose the basic mechanisms for the development of knowledge about, evaluation, protection, preservation, management and conservation of Cultural Routes.
- To define the basic guidelines, principles and criteria for correct use of Cultural Routes as resources for sustainable social and economic development, respecting their authenticity and integrity, appropriate preservation and historical significance.
- To establish the bases for national and international cooperation that will be essential for undertaking research, conservation and development projects related to Cultural Routes, as well as the financing required for these efforts.

## Definition

Any route of communication, be it land, water, or some other type, which is physically delimited and is also characterized by having its own specific dynamic and historic functionality to serve a specific and well-determined purpose, which must fulfill the following conditions:

- a) It must arise from and reflect interactive movements of people as well as multi-dimensional, continuous, and reciprocal exchanges of goods, ideas, knowledge and values between peoples, countries, regions or continents over significant periods of time;
- b) It must have thereby promoted a cross-fertilization of the affected cultures in space and time, as reflected both in their tangible and intangible heritage;
- c) It must have integrated into a dynamic system the historic relations and cultural properties associated with its existence.

### **Defining elements of Cultural Routes: context, content, cross-cultural significance as a whole, dynamic character, and setting.**

1. *Context:* Cultural Routes occur in a natural and /or cultural context upon which they exert an influence and which they help to characterize and enrich with new dimensions as part of an interactive process.
2. *Content:* A Cultural Route must necessarily be supported by tangible elements that bear witness to its cultural heritage and provide a physical confirmation of its existence. Any intangible elements serve to give sense and meaning to the various elements that make up the whole.
  1. The indispensable physical element that determines the existence of a Cultural Route is the communication route itself as an instrument serving a project designed or arising through human activity to accomplish specific goals.
  2. Other basic substantive elements are the tangible heritage assets related to its functionality as a historic route (staging posts, customs offices, places for storage, rest, and lodging, hospitals, markets, ports, defensive fortifications, bridges, means of communication and transport; industrial, mining or other establishments, as well as those linked to manufacturing and trade, that reflect the technical, scientific and social applications and advances in its various eras; urban centers, cultural landscapes, sacred sites, places of worship and devotion, etc.) as well as intangible

heritage elements that bear witness to the process of exchange and dialogue between the peoples involved along its path.

3. *Cross-cultural significance as a whole: The concept of Cultural Route implies a value as a whole which is greater than the sum of its parts and gives the Route its meaning.*
  1. The cultural route constitutes a cultural asset enriched by the different cultures it has fertilized and which transcends them in overall value by offering a substantial number of shared characteristics and value systems.
  2. Within its overall identity, the value of its parts resides in their common, shared, multi-faceted significance.
  3. Its wider scale permits a cultural linking of peoples, countries, regions, and continents.
  4. This breadth of scale is important from the point of view of both the territory included and of the comprehensive management of the various heritage elements included in it. At the same time the cultural diversity it implies provides an alternative to a process of cultural homogenization.
4. *Dynamic character: In addition to presenting physical evidences of its historic path, along with cultural heritage elements, Cultural Routes include a dynamic factor that acts as a conductor or channel through which the reciprocal cultural influences have flowed.*
  1. The dynamic of a Cultural Route does not obey natural laws or casual phenomena, but rather exclusively human processes and interests, and is therefore understandable only as a cultural phenomenon.
  2. This vital fluid of culture is manifested not only in material or tangible aspects, but also in the spirit and traditions making up the intangible heritage of Cultural Routes.
  3. By understanding a Cultural Route as a set of dynamic elements of cultural communication between peoples, its cultural heritage assets can be appreciated in their true spatial and historical dimensions, which allows for a comprehensive and sustainable approach to the conservation of the Route as a whole.



5. **Setting:** The Cultural Route is closely linked to its setting and forms an inseparable part of it.
1. The geographical setting has helped to shape the Cultural Route, either determining its path or influencing its development over time.
  2. The territorial setting, whether natural or cultural (urban or rural), provides the framework of the Cultural Route, gives it its particular atmosphere, characterized by elements and values of both physical and intangible nature, and is fundamental for the comprehension, conservation and enjoyment of the route.
  3. A Cultural Route connects and interrelates geography and very diverse heritage properties, forming a unified whole. Cultural Routes and their setting are related to their different landscapes, natural or cultural, which are but just one of their components and have their own distinctive characteristics and identity depending on the different areas and regions they pass through in their course. The different landscapes contribute to characterize the diverse sections of the Route as a whole, enriching it with their diversity.
  4. The relationship with nature is especially sensitive in some sections, in others it is the relationship with the urban or rural environment, and in the areas with monuments that are isolated from other buildings (such as chapels, monasteries, fountains, bridges, boundary crosses, etc.), it is the relationship of these monuments with their landscape setting which shapes the nature of that section of the Cultural Route.
  5. The protection and conservation of the Cultural Routes requires a profound knowledge of the historic, natural and cultural characteristics of their surroundings. Any interventions that may be necessary must fit in with this context and respect its defining features by facilitating their understanding and not distorting the traditional landscape, whether it is natural, cultural or combined.
  6. A delineation of the setting must be provided for the Cultural Route, clearly marking the boundaries of a well-defined, regulated buffer zone, which should allow the material and immaterial cultural values included in it to be preserved in their full authenticity and integrity. Such protection must include the values of the different landscapes forming part of the Cultural Route and providing its characteristic atmosphere.

## Specific indicators

As basic differentiating indicators applicable to the category of Cultural Route, the following should be considered: the structure of the route and its physical substratum as well as historical data about its use to accomplish a specific goal; any physical structures associated with the concrete purpose and functionality of the Cultural Route; communication elements, and the existence of cultural manifestations of shared origin along (or at given points of) the route such as practices, traditions, customs, and common uses of a religious, ritual, linguistic, festival, culinary, or similar nature; reciprocal influences in music, literature, architecture, fine arts, handicrafts, scientific advances, technical and technological skills, and other material and immaterial cultural assets whose full understanding derives from the historic function of the Cultural Route.

## Types of Cultural Routes

Cultural routes can be classified as follows:

- According to their territorial scope: local, national, regional, continental, or intercontinental.
- According to their cultural scope: within a given cultural region or extended across different geographical areas that have shared or continue to share a process of reciprocal influences in the formation or evolution of cultural values.
- According to their goal or function: social, economic, political, or cultural. These characteristics can be found shared across a multi-dimensional context.
- According to their duration in time: those that are no longer used versus those that continue to develop under the influence of socio-economic, political, and cultural exchanges.
- According to their structural configuration: linear, circular, cruciform, radial or network.
- According to their natural environment: land, aquatic, mixed, or other physical setting.

## Identification, Integrity and Authenticity

### ■ *Prima facie indicators*

For identification and assessment purposes, the following aspects may initially be considered as *prima facie*, non-conclusive evidence of the existence of a Cultural Route:

- Expressions of dynamic social, economic, political, and cultural processes which have generated exchanges between different cultural groups of related areas;
- Distinguishing characteristics that are shared by different geographical and cultural areas connected by historical bonds;
- Evidences of mobility and of relationships forged between peoples or ethnic groups of different cultures;
- Specific cultural features rooted in the traditional life of different communities;
- Heritage elements and cultural practices—such as ceremonies, festivals and religious celebrations representative of shared values for different communities within (a) specific cultural and historic area(s)—related to the significance and functionality of the Route.

### ■ *Identification process*

The process for identifying a Cultural Route will necessarily take into account its specific functionality to serve a concrete and well-determined purpose, the tangible and intangible values of its heritage dynamically generated as a result of reciprocal cultural influences, its structural configuration, its whole geographic and historic context, its natural and cultural setting, whether the latter is urban or rural, and its corresponding characteristic environmental values, its relationships to the landscape, its duration in time, and its symbolic and spiritual dimension, all of which will contribute to its identification and to the understanding of its significance.

The intangible assets of a Cultural Route are fundamental for understanding its significance and its associative heritage values. Therefore, material aspects must always be studied in connection with other values of an intangible nature.

For the purpose of its comparative evaluation, the temporal duration and historic significance of the different sections of the Route in relation to the whole should also be taken into account.

In the case of a living Cultural Route, the relationships and dynamic functions associated with the specific and well-determined purpose that gave rise to its existence and serves to define and identify the route should be maintained, even if the historic processes have undergone change over time and new elements have been incorporated. These new elements should be evaluated within the framework of their functional relationship to the Cultural Route, and the case may occur where properties that have heritage values in themselves cannot be considered as components of the Cultural Route because they do not form part of it.

### ■ *Authenticity*

Every Cultural Route should fulfill authenticity criteria demonstrably and credibly expressing its value in terms of both its natural and cultural environment, and concerning both its defining elements and its distinctive features of a material and immaterial nature:

- These criteria should be applied to each section under study to assess its significance in relation to the overall meaning of the Route throughout its historical development, and to verify the authenticity of its structural layout through the vestiges of its path.
- Authenticity should also be evident in the natural and cultural context of each stretch of the Route subject to analysis and assessment, as well as in the other tangible and intangible heritage elements included within its historic functionality and its setting.
- Even if in certain sections the material traces of a Cultural Route are not clearly preserved, its existence in these areas could be shown through historiography, intangible elements and immaterial sources of information that prove their real meaning as integral components of that Route and evidence its authenticity.
- The techniques and methodologies used for the protection, conservation and management of the Cultural Routes, whether traditional or newly implemented, must respect the authenticity criteria.

### ■ *Integrity*

The verification of the integrity of a Cultural Route must necessarily be based on a sufficiently representative set of both tangible and intangible evidences and elements that witness to its global significance and values as a whole and ensure the complete representation of the features and importance of the historic processes which generated the Cultural Route.

Evidences of the historic relationships and dynamic functions essential to the distinctive character of the Cultural Route should be maintained. In addition, regard must be had for whether its physical fabric and/or its significant features are in good condition and the impact of deterioration processes controlled, and whether or not the Route reflects any possible side effects of development, abandonment or neglect.

## Methodology

The concept of Cultural Route requires a specific methodology for its research, assessment, protection, preservation, conservation, use and management. Given its breadth and its value as a whole, as well as its territorial dimensions, this methodology requires the establishment of a system of coordinated and integrally managed activities.

It is essential to start with the identification both of the Route as a whole and of its individual sections, along with an inventory of the assets that comprise it and an analysis of their state of conservation which will facilitate the elaboration of a strategic plan for its preservation. This plan should necessarily include measures for raising awareness of the Route and creating interest in it among public and private entities. It also requires the formulation of coordinated measures and specific legal instruments for the protection, use and management of all of its elements as substantive parts of the value and significance of the Route as a whole.

### 1. *Research*

The study of cultural routes may extend across different geographical areas, possibly widely separated from each other. It is therefore advisable to set up several research teams located at the main

characteristic points of the Route under study. The research methodology, along with the adoption of practices and the attachment of indicators for proper identification and assessment of the heritage values in the different sections of a Cultural Route, should never lose sight of the meaning of the Route as a whole, in order to avoid any loss in the meaning or historic significance of the route. Research teams working on this cultural heritage category should be of a multidisciplinary and co-operative nature. Common working criteria should be established based on the principle of starting with an investigation of the parts, but without losing sight of the project as a whole. Similarly, common methodological instruments—standardized in advance—should be used for the collection of data. The project plan should include coordinating mechanisms that will facilitate communication and cooperation among the researchers in order to make it possible to transmit data about the work and achievements of each team.

Researchers should keep in mind that the presence of various types of cultural heritage properties along the path of a Cultural Route does not, in and of itself, imply that they are necessarily integral components of that route or are appropriate objects of study in relation to it. The only elements that should be highlighted in the scientific investigation of a Cultural Route are those related to the specific goal of the Route and any influences arising from its functional dynamic.

### 2. *Funding*

Given the scope of the tasks involved in identifying and highlighting the value of a vast Cultural Route, funding should be obtained in stages that will allow for balanced, coordinated progress in the research projects as well as the preservation, use, and management projects related to its various sections. It is advisable to establish a joint estimation of the values to be preserved so as to allow the setting of a scale of priorities for action and the implementation of the corresponding strategies. This requires that funding be obtained through bilateral or multilateral cooperation agreements, as well as through the creation of bodies specifically devoted to researching and highlighting the value of the Route. Along the same lines, regional

bodies whose jurisdictions coincide totally or partially with the historic path of a Cultural Route should determine how they can best gain the interest of the States involved and obtain their cooperation. It is also important to attract, if possible, the cooperation of philanthropic institutions and private donors.

3. Protection – Assessment – Preservation / Conservation

Cultural Routes and their setting require new instruments for their assessment, protection, conservation and evaluation. It is not sufficient to guarantee protection of their heritage elements on a partial or random basis. The preparation of rigorous inventories of these elements, as well as an assessment of their authenticity and integrity should take place in order to identify impacts on the values of the Cultural Route and therefore impacts on its significance. It is also necessary to control the impact of deterioration processes, and to develop a strategy to prevent the adverse effects of development and neglect. All of this requires the establishment of a system of coordinated legal measures and appropriate instruments that guarantee that the Route will be preserved and its value and significance highlighted in a holistic fashion. Understanding heritage values is fundamental prior to any intervention on Cultural Routes that may impact/change their significance.

4. Sustainable Use – Relationship to Tourist Activities

With regard to its use, a Cultural Route can be used to promote an activity of social and economic interest of extraordinary importance for stable development.

Special care should be taken to avoid confusion between the concepts of tourist routes—even including those of cultural interest—and Cultural Routes. However, it should also be recognized that a Cultural Route is a reality that can have great importance for territorial cohesion and sustainable development. From this point of view, efforts should be made to promote knowledge about Cultural Routes, along with their appropriate and sustainable use for tourism purposes, always with the adoption of appropriate measures aimed at eliminating risks. For this purpose, protection and promotion of a Cultural Route should harmoniously integrate a supplementary infrastructure – for tourist activities, access routes, information, interpretation and presentation

– with the essential condition that it does not jeopardize the meaning, authenticity and integrity of the historic values of the Cultural Route as key elements to be conveyed to visitors.

Tourist visits should be managed on a rational basis in accordance with prior environmental impact studies and with plans for public use and community participation, as well as control and monitoring measures intended to prevent the negative impacts of tourism.

The development of a Cultural Route for tourism purposes should guarantee in any case that priority is given to the participation of the local community and to local and regional tourist companies. Every effort should be made to prevent the creation of monopolies by large international companies or by powerful companies based in the more developed countries through which the historic path of the Cultural Route passes.

Given the fact that a Cultural Route is an instrument for cooperation and understanding which provides a holistic reading of the encounter of cultures and civilization that form that Route, we should also keep in mind that independently of the relative importance of each one of its parts, the promotion of positive developments in each one, leads to increased interest on the Route and benefits for the other parts.

5. Management

“Understanding of Cultural Routes Significance” becomes the basic/fundamental principle associated to management of cultural routes. This implies ensuring that all activities related to their research, assessment and social dissemination of knowledge about them are carried out in a coordinated and harmonious manner. This also requires a cross coordination that guarantees the combination of policies relating to protection, preservation, conservation, territorial organization, sustainable development, use and tourism. Therefore, joint projects need to be prepared that ensure sustainable development on a national (at the provincial, regional, local level, etc.) and international scale, as well as the establishment of management tools designed to protect the Route against natural disasters and all kinds of risks which could impact on the integrity and authenticity of the Cultural Route and therefore on its significance.

#### 6. Public participation

The protection, conservation/preservation, promotion and management of a Cultural Route calls for the stimulation of public awareness, and the participation of the inhabitants of the areas which share the Route.

### **International cooperation**

There are notable examples of Cultural Routes whose historic paths involve various countries. For this reason, international cooperation is essential for research, assessment, and preservation of the assets that make up international Cultural Routes.

When Cultural Routes exist which involve countries with different degrees of development, it is recommended that the more developed countries provide the means for economic, technical, and logistic cooperation as well as assistance in the exchange of information, experience, and researchers.

It is highly desirable that UNESCO and other international organizations should establish mechanisms of cooperation (financial, technical, and logistic) to help foster and implement projects related to Cultural Routes that are of interest to more than one country.

Cultural Routes should be seen as symbols of union between peoples. The historic ties developed along Cultural Routes can serve to promote projects based on renewed cooperation between peoples who shared certain values and knowledge in the past.

# QUÉBEC 2008





**QUÉBEC 2008**

## **QUÉBEC DECLARATION ON THE PRESERVATION OF THE SPIRIT OF PLACE**

Adopted at Québec, Canada, October 4th 2008

### **Preamble**

Meeting in the historic city of Québec (Canada), from 29 September to 4 October 2008, at the invitation of ICOMOS Canada, on the occasion of the 16th General Assembly of ICOMOS and the celebrations marking the 400th anniversary of the founding of Québec, the participants adopt the following Declaration of principles and recommendations to preserve the spirit of place through the safeguarding of tangible and intangible heritage, which is regarded as an innovative and efficient manner of ensuring sustainable and social development throughout the world.

This Declaration is part of a series of measures and actions undertaken by ICOMOS over the course of the past five years to safeguard and promote the spirit of places, namely their living, social and spiritual nature. In 2003, ICOMOS focused the scientific symposium of its 14th General Assembly on the theme of the preservation of social intangible values of monuments and sites. In the ensuing Kimberly Declaration, ICOMOS committed itself to taking into account the intangible values (memory, beliefs, traditional knowledge, attachment to place) and the local communities that are the custodians of these values in the management and preservation of monuments and sites under the World Heritage Convention of 1972. The ICOMOS Xi'an Declaration of 2005 draws attention to the conservation of context, defined as the physical, visual and natural aspects as well as social and spiritual practices, customs, traditional knowledge and other intangible forms and expressions, in the protection and promotion of world heritage monuments and sites. It also calls upon a multidisciplinary approach and diversified sources of information in order to better understand, manage and conserve context. The Declaration of Foz Do Iguaçu, drawn up in 2008 by ICOMOS Americas, specifies that the tangible and intangible components of heritage are essential in the preservation of the identity of communities that have created and transmitted spaces



of cultural and historical significance. The new ICOMOS charters on Cultural Routes and on Interpretation and Presentation, formulated after extensive consultations and presented for ratification at the present 16th ICOMOS General Assembly, also recognize the importance of intangible dimensions of heritage and the spiritual value of place. Because of the indivisible nature of tangible and intangible heritage and the meanings, values and context intangible heritage gives to objects and places, ICOMOS is currently considering the adoption of a new charter dedicated specifically to the intangible heritage of monuments and sites. In this regard, we encourage discussion and debates in order to develop a new conceptual vocabulary that takes into account the ontological changes of the spirit of place.

The 16th General Assembly, and more specifically the Youth Forum, the Aboriginal Forum and the Scientific Symposium, have provided an opportunity to further explore the relationship between tangible and intangible heritage, and the internal social and cultural mechanisms of the spirit of place. Spirit of place is defined as the tangible (buildings, sites, landscapes, routes, objects) and the intangible elements (memories, narratives, written documents, rituals, festivals, traditional knowledge, values, textures, colors, odors, etc.), that is to say the physical and the spiritual elements that give meaning, value, emotion and mystery to place. Rather than separate spirit from place, the intangible from the tangible, and consider them as opposed to each other, we have investigated the many ways in which the two interact and mutually construct one another. The spirit of place is constructed by various social actors, its architects and managers as well as its users, who all contribute actively and concurrently to giving it meaning. Considered as a relational concept, spirit of place takes on a plural and dynamic character, capable of possessing multiple meanings and singularities, of changing through time, and of belonging to different groups. This more dynamic approach is also better adapted to today's globalized world, which is characterized by transnational population movements, relocated populations, increased intercultural contacts, pluralistic societies, and multiple attachments to place.

The spirit of place offers a more comprehensive understanding of the living and, at the same time, permanent character of monuments, sites

and cultural landscapes. It provides a richer, more dynamic, and inclusive vision of cultural heritage. Spirit of place exists, in one form or another, in practically all the cultures of the world, and is constructed by human beings in response to their social needs. The communities that inhabit place, especially when they are traditional societies, should be intimately associated in the safeguarding of its memory, vitality, continuity and spirituality.

The participants of the 16th General Assembly of ICOMOS therefore address the following Declaration of principles and recommendations to intergovernmental and non-governmental organizations, national and local authorities and all institutions and specialists in a position to contribute through legislation, policies, planning processes and management to better protecting and promoting the spirit of place.

## Rethinking the Spirit of Place

1. Recognizing that the spirit of place is made up of tangible (sites, buildings, landscapes, routes, objects) as well as intangible elements (memories, narratives, written documents, festivals, commemorations, rituals, traditional knowledge, values, textures, colors, odors, etc.), which all significantly contribute to making place and to giving it spirit, we declare that intangible cultural heritage gives a richer and more complete meaning to heritage as a whole and it must be taken into account in all legislation concerning cultural heritage, and in all conservation and restoration projects for monuments, sites, landscapes, routes and collections of objects.
2. Because the spirit of place is complex and multiform, we demand that governments and other stakeholders call upon the expertise of multidisciplinary research teams and traditional practitioners in order to better understand, preserve and transmit the spirit of place.
3. Since the spirit of place is a continuously reconstructed process, which responds to the needs for change and continuity of communities, we uphold that it can vary in time and from one culture to another according to their practices of memory, and that a place can have several spirits and be shared by different groups.

## Identifying the Threats to the Spirit of Place

4. Since climatic change, mass tourism, armed conflict and urban development lead to the transformation and disruption of societies, we need to better understand these threats in order to establish preventive measures and sustainable solutions. We recommend that governmental and non-governmental agencies, and local and national heritage organizations develop long term strategic plans to prevent the degradation of the spirit of place and its environment. The inhabitants and local authorities should also be made aware of the safeguarding of the spirit of place so that they are better prepared to deal with the threats of a changing world.
5. As the sharing of places invested with different spirits by several groups increases the risk of competition and conflict, we recognize that these sites require specific management plans and strategies, adapted to the pluralistic context of modern multicultural societies. Because the threats to the spirit of place are especially high amongst minority groups, be they natives or newcomers, we recommend that these groups benefit first and foremost from specific policies and practices.

## Safeguarding the Spirit of Place

6. Because in most countries of the world today the spirit of place, in particular its intangible components, do not currently benefit from formal educational programs or legal protection, we recommend the setting up of forums and consultations with experts from different backgrounds and resource persons from local communities, and the development of training programs and legal policies in order to better safeguard and promote the spirit of place.
7. Considering that modern digital technologies (digital databases, websites) can be used efficiently and effectively at a low cost to develop multimedia inventories that integrate tangible and intangible elements of heritage, we strongly recommend their widespread use in order to better preserve, disseminate and promote heritage places and their spirit. These technologies facilitate the diversity and constant renewal of the documentation on the spirit of place.

## Transmitting the Spirit of Place

8. Recognizing that spirit of place is transmitted essentially by people, and that transmission is an important part of its conservation, we declare that it is through interactive communication and the participation of the concerned communities that the spirit of place is most efficiently safeguarded, used and enhanced. Communication is the best tool for keeping the spirit of place alive.
9. Given that local communities are generally in the best position to comprehend the spirit of place, especially in the case of traditional cultural groups, we maintain that they are also best equipped to safeguard it and should be intimately associated in all endeavors to preserve and transmit the spirit of place. Non-formal (narratives, rituals, performances, traditional experience and practices, etc.) and formal (educational programs, digital databases, websites, pedagogical tools, multimedia presentations, etc.) means of transmission should be encouraged because they ensure not only the safeguarding of the spirit of place but, more importantly, the sustainable and social development of the community.
10. Recognizing that intergenerational and transcultural transmission plays an important role in the sustained dissemination and the preservation of the spirit of place, we recommend the association and involvement of younger generations, as well as different cultural groups associated with the site, in policy-making and the management of the spirit of place.

<https://www.icomos.org/en/resources/charters-and-texts>







La Cartouche

24 984 017

10 999 713



PARIS 2011

## RECOMMENDATION ON THE HISTORIC URBAN LANDSCAPE, INCLUDING A GLOSSARY OF DEFINITIONS

United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization, Paris, 10 November 2011

### Preamble

*The General Conference,*

*Considering* that historic urban areas are among the most abundant and diverse manifestations of our common cultural heritage, shaped by generations and constituting a key testimony to humankind's endeavours and aspirations through space and time,

*Also considering* that urban heritage is for humanity a social, cultural and economic asset, defined by an historic layering of values that have been produced by successive and existing cultures and an accumulation of traditions and experiences, recognized as such in their diversity,

*Further considering* that urbanization is proceeding on an unprecedented scale in the history of humankind, and that throughout the world this is driving socio-economic change and growth, which should be harnessed at the local, national, regional and international levels,

*Recognizing*, the dynamic nature of living cities,

*Noting*, however, that rapid and frequently uncontrolled development is transforming urban areas and their settings, which may cause fragmentation and deterioration to urban heritage with deep impacts on community values, throughout the world,

*Considering*, therefore, that in order to support the protection of natural and cultural heritage, emphasis needs to be put on the integration of historic urban area conservation, management and planning strategies into local development processes and urban planning, such as, contemporary architecture and infrastructure development, for which the application of a landscape approach would help maintain urban identity,

*Also considering* that the principle of sustainable development provides for the preservation of existing resources, the active protection of urban heritage and its sustainable management is a condition *sine qua non* of development,

*Recalling* that a corpus of UNESCO standard-setting documents, including conventions, recommendations and charters<sup>1</sup> exists on the subject of the conservation of historic areas, all of which remain valid,

*Also noting*, however, that under processes of demographic shifts, global market liberalization and decentralization, as well as mass tourism, market exploitation of heritage, and climate change, conditions have changed and cities are subject to development pressures and challenges not present at the time of adoption of the most recent UNESCO recommendation on historic areas in 1976 (Recommendation concerning the Safeguarding and Contemporary Role of Historic Areas),

*Further noting* the evolution of the concepts of culture and heritage and of the approaches to their management, through the combined action of

local initiatives and international meetings,<sup>2</sup> which have been useful in guiding policies and practices worldwide,

*Desiring* to supplement and extend the application of the standards and principles laid down in existing international instruments,

*Having before it* proposals concerning the historic urban landscape as an approach to urban heritage conservation, which appear on the agenda of the 36th session of the General Conference as item 8.1,

*Having decided* at its 35th session that this issue should be addressed by means of a recommendation to Member States,

1. *Adopts*, this 10th day of November 2011, the present Recommendation on the Historic Urban Landscape;
2. *Recommends* that Member States adopt the appropriate legislative institutional framework and measures, with a view to applying the principles and norms set out in this Recommendation in the territories under their jurisdiction;
3. *Also recommends* that Member States bring this Recommendation to the attention of the local, national and regional authorities, and of institutions, services or bodies and associations concerned with the safeguarding, conservation and management of historic urban areas and their wider geographical settings.

---

1 In particular, the 1972 Convention concerning the Protection of the World Cultural and Natural Heritage, the 2005 Convention on the Protection and Promotion of the Diversity of Cultural Expressions, the 1962 Recommendation concerning the Safeguarding of the Beauty and Character of Landscapes and Sites, the 1968 Recommendation concerning the Preservation of Cultural Property Endangered by Public or Private Works, the 1972 Recommendation concerning the Protection, at National Level, of the Cultural and Natural Heritage, the 1976 Recommendation concerning the Safeguarding and Contemporary Role of Historic Areas, the 1964 ICOMOS International Charter for the Conservation and Restoration of Monuments and Sites (Venice Charter), the 1982 ICOMOS Historic Gardens (Florence Charter), and the 1987 ICOMOS Charter for the Conservation of Historic Towns and Urban Areas (Washington Charter), the 2005 ICOMOS Xi'an Declaration on the Conservation of the Setting of Heritage Structures, Sites and Areas, as well as the 2005 Vienna Memorandum on World Heritage and Contemporary Architecture – Managing the Historic Urban Landscape.

---

2 In particular the 1982 World Conference on Cultural Policies in Mexico City, the 1994 Nara Meeting on Authenticity, the 1995 summit of the World Commission on Culture and Development, the 1996 HABITAT II Conference in Istanbul with ratification of Agenda 21, the 1998 UNESCO Intergovernmental Conference on Cultural Policies for Development in Stockholm, the 1998 joint World Bank-UNESCO Conference on Culture in Sustainable Development–Investing in Cultural and Natural Endowments, the 2005 International Conference on World Heritage and Contemporary Architecture in Vienna, the 2005 ICOMOS General Assembly on the Setting of Monuments and Sites in Xi'an, and the 2008 ICOMOS General Assembly on the Spirit of Place in Québec.

## Introduction

1. Our time is witness to the largest human migration in history. More than half of the world's population now lives in urban areas. Urban areas are increasingly important as engines of growth and as centres of innovation and creativity; they provide opportunities for employment and education and respond to people's evolving needs and aspirations.
2. Rapid and uncontrolled urbanization, however, may frequently result in social and spatial fragmentation and in a drastic deterioration of the quality of the urban environment and of the surrounding rural areas. Notably, this may be due to excessive building density, standardized and monotonous buildings, loss of public space and amenities, inadequate infrastructure, debilitating poverty, social isolation, and an increasing risk of climate-related disasters.
3. Urban heritage, including its tangible and intangible components, constitutes a key resource in enhancing the liveability of urban areas, and fosters economic development and social cohesion in a changing global environment. As the future of humanity hinges on the effective planning and management of resources, conservation has become a strategy to achieve a balance between urban growth and quality of life on a sustainable basis.
4. In the course of the past half century, urban heritage conservation has emerged as an important sector of public policy worldwide. It is a response to the need to preserve shared values and to benefit from the legacy of history. However, the shift from an emphasis on architectural monuments primarily towards a broader recognition of the importance of the social, cultural and economic processes in the conservation of urban values, should be matched by a drive to adapt the existing policies and to create new tools to address this vision.
5. This Recommendation addresses the need to better integrate and frame urban heritage conservation strategies within the larger goals of overall sustainable development, in order to support public and private actions aimed at preserving and enhancing the quality of the human environment. It suggests a landscape approach for identifying,

conserving and managing historic areas within their broader urban contexts, by considering the interrelationships of their physical forms, their spatial organization and connection, their natural features and settings, and their social, cultural and economic values.

6. This approach addresses the policy, governance and management concerns involving a variety of stakeholders, including local, national, regional, international, public and private actors in the urban development process.
7. This Recommendation builds upon the four previous UNESCO recommendations concerning heritage preservation, and recognizes the importance and the validity of their concepts and principles in the history and practice of conservation. In addition, modern conservation conventions and charters address the many dimensions of cultural and natural heritage, and constitute the foundations of this Recommendation.

## Definition

8. The historic urban landscape is the urban area understood as the result of a historic layering of cultural and natural values and attributes, extending beyond the notion of "historic centre" or "ensemble" to include the broader urban context and its geographical setting.
9. This wider context includes notably the site's topography, geomorphology, hydrology and natural features, its built environment, both historic and contemporary, its infrastructures above and below ground, its open spaces and gardens, its land use patterns and spatial organization, perceptions and visual relationships, as well as all other elements of the urban structure. It also includes social and cultural practices and values, economic processes and the intangible dimensions of heritage as related to diversity and identity.
10. This definition provides the basis for a comprehensive and integrated approach for the identification, assessment, conservation and management of historic urban landscapes within an overall sustainable development framework.
11. The historic urban landscape approach is aimed at preserving the quality of the human environment, enhancing the productive and



sustainable use of urban spaces, while recognizing their dynamic character, and promoting social and functional diversity. It integrates the goals of urban heritage conservation and those of social and economic development. It is rooted in a balanced and sustainable relationship between the urban and natural environment, between the needs of present and future generations and the legacy from the past.

12. The historic urban landscape approach considers cultural diversity and creativity as key assets for human, social and economic development, and provides tools to manage physical and social transformations and to ensure that contemporary interventions are harmoniously integrated with heritage in a historic setting and take into account regional contexts.
13. The historic urban landscape approach learns from the traditions and perceptions of local communities, while respecting the values of the national and international communities.

## **I. Challenges and opportunities for the historic urban landscape**

14. The existing UNESCO recommendations recognize the important role of historic areas in modern societies. These recommendations also identify a number of specific threats to the conservation of historic urban areas, and provide general principles, policies and guidelines to meet such challenges.
15. The historic urban landscape approach reflects the fact that both the discipline and practice of urban heritage conservation have evolved significantly in recent decades, enabling policy-makers and managers to deal more effectively with new challenges and opportunities. The historic urban landscape approach supports communities in their quest for development and adaptation, while retaining the characteristics and values linked to their history and collective memory, and to the environment.
16. In the past decades, owing to the sharp increase in the world's urban population, the scale and speed of development, and the changing economy, urban settlements and their historic areas have become

centres and drivers of economic growth in many regions of the world, and have taken on a new role in cultural and social life. As a result, they have also come under a large array of new pressures, including:

### ***Urbanization and globalization***

17. Urban growth is transforming the essence of many historic urban areas. Global processes have a deep impact on the values attributed by communities to urban areas and their settings, and on the perceptions and realities of their inhabitants and users. On the one hand, urbanization provides economic, social and cultural opportunities that can enhance the quality of life and traditional character of urban areas; on the other hand, the unmanaged changes in urban density and growth can undermine the sense of place, the integrity of the urban fabric, and the identity of communities. Some historic urban areas are losing their functionality, traditional role and populations. The historic urban landscape approach may assist in managing and mitigating such impacts.

### ***Development***

18. Many economic processes offer ways and means to alleviate urban poverty and to promote social and human development. The greater availability of innovations, such as information technology and sustainable planning, design and building practices, can improve urban areas, thus enhancing the quality of life. When properly managed through the historic urban landscape approach, new functions, such as services and tourism, are important economic initiatives that can contribute to the well-being of the communities and to the conservation of historic urban areas and their cultural heritage while ensuring economic and social diversity and the residential function. Failing to capture these opportunities leads to unsustainable and unviable cities, just as implementing them in an inadequate and inappropriate manner results in the destruction of heritage assets and irreplaceable losses for future generations.

### ***Environment***

19. Human settlements have constantly adapted to climatic and environmental changes, including those resulting from disasters.

However, the intensity and speed of present changes are challenging our complex urban environments. Concern for the environment, in particular for water and energy consumption, calls for approaches and new models for urban living, based on ecologically sensitive policies and practices aimed at strengthening sustainability and the quality of urban life. Many of these initiatives, however, should integrate natural and cultural heritage as resources for sustainable development.

20. Changes to historic urban areas can also result from sudden disasters and armed conflicts. These may be short lived but can have lasting effects. The historic urban landscape approach may assist in managing and mitigating such impacts.

## II. Policies

21. Modern urban conservation policies, as reflected in existing international recommendations and charters, have set the stage for the preservation of historic urban areas. However, present and future challenges require the definition and implementation of a new generation of public policies identifying and protecting the historic layering and balance of cultural and natural values in urban environments.
22. Conservation of the urban heritage should be integrated into general policy planning and practices and those related to the broader urban context. Policies should provide mechanisms for balancing conservation and sustainability in the short and long terms. Special emphasis should be placed on the harmonious, integration of contemporary interventions into the historic urban fabric . In particular, the responsibilities of the different stakeholders are the following:
  - (a) Member States should integrate urban heritage conservation strategies into national development policies and agendas according to the historic urban landscape approach. Within this framework, local authorities should prepare urban development plans taking into account the area's values, including the landscape and other heritage values, and features associated therewith;

- (b) Public and private stakeholders should cooperate, *inter alia*, through partnerships to ensure the successful application of the historic urban landscape approach;
  - (c) International organizations dealing with sustainable development processes should integrate the historic urban landscape approach into their strategies, plans and operations;
  - (d) National and international non-governmental organizations should participate in developing and disseminating tools and best practices for the implementation of the historic urban landscape approach.
23. All levels of government – local, regional, national/federal, – aware of their responsibility – should contribute to the definition, elaboration, implementation and assessment of urban heritage conservation policies. These policies should be based on a participatory approach by all stakeholders and coordinated from both the institutional and sectorial viewpoints.

## III. Tools

24. The approach based on the historic urban landscape implies the application of a range of traditional and innovative tools adapted to local contexts. Some of these tools, which need to be developed as part of the process involving the different stakeholders, might include:
  - (a) **Civic engagement tools** should involve a diverse cross-section of stakeholders, and empower them to identify key values in their urban areas, develop visions that reflect their diversity, set goals, and agree on actions to safeguard their heritage and promote sustainable development. These tools, which constitute an integral part of urban governance dynamics, should facilitate intercultural dialogue by learning from communities about their histories, traditions, values, needs and aspirations, and by facilitating mediation and negotiation between groups with conflicting interests.
  - (b) **Knowledge and planning tools** should help protect the integrity and authenticity of the attributes of urban heritage. They

should also allow for the recognition of cultural significance and diversity, and provide for the monitoring and management of change to improve the quality of life and of urban space. These tools would include documentation and mapping of cultural and natural characteristics. Heritage, social and environmental impact assessments should be used to support and facilitate decision-making processes within a framework of sustainable development.

- (c) **Regulatory systems** should reflect local conditions, and may include legislative and regulatory measures aimed at the conservation and management of the tangible and intangible attributes of the urban heritage, including their social, environmental and cultural values. Traditional and customary systems should be recognized and reinforced as necessary.
- (d) **Financial tools** should be aimed at building capacities and supporting innovative income-generating development, rooted in tradition. In addition to government and global funds from international agencies, financial tools should be effectively employed to foster private investment at the local level. Micro-credit and other flexible financing to support local enterprise, as well as a variety of models of partnerships, are also central to making the historic urban landscape approach financially sustainable.

#### IV. Capacity-building, research, information and communication

- 25. Capacity-building should involve the main stakeholders: communities, decision-makers, and professionals and managers, in order to foster understanding of the historic urban landscape approach and its implementation. Effective capacity-building hinges on an active collaboration of these main stakeholders, aimed at adapting the implementation of this Recommendation to regional contexts in order to define and refine the local strategies and objectives, action frameworks and resource mobilization schemes.

- 26. Research should target the complex layering of urban settlements, in order to identify values, understand their meaning for the communities, and present them to visitors in a comprehensive manner. Academic and university institutions and other centres of research should be encouraged to develop scientific research on aspects of the historic urban landscape approach, and cooperate at the local, national, regional and international level. It is essential to document the state of urban areas and their evolution, to facilitate the evaluation of proposals for change, and to improve protective and managerial skills and procedures.
- 27. Encourage the use of information and communication technology to document, understand and present the complex layering of urban areas and their constituent components. The collection and analysis of this data is an essential part of the knowledge of urban areas. To communicate with all sectors of society, it is particularly important to reach out to youth and all under-represented groups in order to encourage their participation.

#### V. International cooperation

- 28. Member States and international governmental and non-governmental organizations should facilitate public understanding and involvement in the implementation of the historic urban landscape approach, by disseminating best practices and lessons learned from different parts of the world, in order to strengthen the network of knowledge-sharing and capacity-building.
- 29. Member States should promote multinational cooperation between local authorities.
- 30. International development and cooperation agencies of Member States, non-governmental organizations and foundations should be encouraged to develop methodologies which take into account the historic urban landscape approach and to harmonize them with their assistance programmes and projects pertaining to urban areas.

## APPENDIX

### Glossary of definitions

#### Historic area/city (from the 1976 Recommendation)

“Historic and architectural (including vernacular) areas” shall be taken to mean any groups of buildings, structures and open spaces including archaeological and palaeontological sites, constituting human settlements in an urban or rural environment, the cohesion and value of which, from the archaeological, architectural, prehistoric, historic, aesthetic or sociocultural point of view are recognized. Among these “areas”, which are very varied in nature, it is possible to distinguish the following “in particular: prehistoric sites, historic towns, old urban quarters, villages and hamlets as well as homogeneous monumental groups, it being understood that the latter should as a rule be carefully preserved unchanged.

#### Historic urban area (from the ICOMOS Washington Charter)

Historic urban areas, large and small, include cities, towns and historic centres or quarters, together with their natural and man-made environments. Beyond their role as historical documents, these areas embody the values of traditional urban cultures.

**Urban heritage** (from European Union research report N° 16 (2004), Sustainable development of Urban historical areas through and active Integration within Towns – SUIT)

Urban heritage comprises three main categories:

- Monumental heritage of exceptional cultural value;
- Non-exceptional heritage elements but present in a coherent way with a relative abundance;
- New urban elements to be considered (for instance):
  - o The urban built form;
  - The open space: streets, public open spaces;
  - Urban infrastructures: material networks and equipments.

#### **Urban conservation**

Urban conservation is not limited to the preservation of single buildings. It views architecture as but one element of the overall urban setting, making it a complex and multifaceted discipline. By definition, then, urban conservation lies at the very heart of urban planning.

#### **Built environment**

The built environment refers to human-made (versus natural) resources and infrastructure designed to support human activity, such as buildings, roads, parks, and other amenities.

**Landscape approach** (from the International Union for Conservation of Nature – IUCN, and the World Wildlife Fund – WWF)

The landscape approach is a framework for making landscape-level conservation decisions. The landscape approach helps to reach decisions about the advisability of particular interventions (such as a new road or plantation), and to facilitate the planning, negotiation and implementation of activities across a whole landscape.

#### **Historic urban landscape**

(see definition in paragraph 9 of the Recommendation)

#### **Setting** (from the ICOMOS Xi’an Declaration)

The setting of a heritage structure, site or area is defined as the immediate and extended environment that is part of, or contributes to, its significance and distinctive character.

#### **Cultural significance** (from the ICOMOS Australia Burra Charter)

Cultural significance means aesthetic, historic, scientific, social or spiritual value for past, present or future generations. Cultural significance is embodied in the place itself, its fabric, setting, use, associations, meanings, records, related places and related objects. Places may have a range of values for different individuals or groups.

<https://whc.unesco.org/en/hul/>



**PARIS 2011**





**PARIS 2011**

# **JOINT ICOMOS – TICCIH PRINCIPLES FOR THE CONSERVATION OF INDUSTRIAL HERITAGE SITES, STRUCTURES, AREAS AND LANDSCAPES**

## **«The Dublin Principles»**

Adopted by the 17th ICOMOS General Assembly on 28 November 2011

### **Preamble**

Around the World, a great diversity of sites, structures, complexes, cities and settlements, areas, landscapes and routes bear witness to human activities of industrial extraction and production. In many places, this heritage is still in use and industrialisation is still an active process with a sense of historical continuity, while in other places it offers archaeological evidence of past activities and technologies. Besides the tangible heritage associated with industrial technology and processes, engineering, architecture and town-planning, it includes many intangible dimensions embodied in the skills, memories and social life of workers and their communities.

The global process of industrialisation observed over the past two centuries constitutes a major stage of human history, making its heritage particularly important and critical to the Modern World. Precursors and beginnings of industrialisation can be recognized in many parts of the world well back into ancient times through active or archaeological sites, and our attention extends to any examples of such process and its heritage. However, for our purposes, these joint principles' primary interests coincide with the common notions of the Modern Era Industrial Revolution, marked by distinctive and dedicated production, transportation and power-generating or harnessing processes and technologies, trade and commercial interactions, and new social and cultural patterns.



The industrial heritage is highly vulnerable and often at risk, often lost for lack of awareness, documentation, recognition or protection but also because of changing economic trends, negative perceptions, environmental issues or its sheer size and complexity. Yet, by extending the life-cycle of existing structures and their embodied energy, conservation of the built industrial heritage, can contribute to achieving the goals of sustainable development at the local, national and international levels. It touches the social as well as the physical and environmental aspects of development and should be acknowledged as such.

Over the past decades, growing research, international and interdisciplinary cooperation as well as community initiatives have greatly contributed to a better appreciation of the industrial heritage and increased collaboration between stewards, stakeholders and professionals. This progress has benefitted from the development of a corpus of international references and guidelines by ICOMOS – the International Council on Monuments and Sites, and the implementation of international recommendations and instruments such as the World Heritage Convention adopted by UNESCO in 1972. In 2003, The International Committee for the Conservation of Industrial Heritage (TICCIH) adopted its Nizhny Tagil Charter for the Industrial Heritage, a first international reference text of such recognition to guide protection and conservation in the field.

Acknowledging the particular nature of the industrial heritage and the issues and threats affecting it as a result of its relation to the contemporary economic, legal, cultural and environmental contexts, ICOMOS and TICCIH wish to expand their cooperation by adopting and promoting the dissemination and use of the following Principles to assist in the documentation, protection, conservation and appreciation of industrial heritage as part of the heritage of human societies around the World.

1. Definition: The industrial heritage consists of sites, structures, complexes, areas and landscapes as well as the related machinery, objects or documents that provide evidence of past or ongoing industrial processes of production, the extraction of raw materials, their transformation into goods, and the related energy and transport infrastructures. Industrial heritage reflects the profound connection between the cultural and natural environment, as industrial processes – whether ancient or

modern – depend on natural sources of raw materials, energy and transportation networks to produce and distribute products to broader markets. It includes both material assets – immovable and movable –, and intangible dimensions such as technical know-how, the organisation of work and workers, and the complex social and cultural legacy that shaped the life of communities and brought major organizational changes to entire societies and the world in general.

2. Industrial heritage sites are very diversified in terms of their purpose, design and evolution over time. Many are representative of processes, technologies as well as regional or historical conditions while others constitute outstanding achievements of global influence. Others are complexes and multiple site operations or systems whose many components are interdependent, with different technologies and historical periods frequently present. The significance and value of industrial heritage is intrinsic to the structures or sites themselves, their material fabric, components, machinery and setting, expressed in the industrial landscape, in written documentation, and also in the intangible records contained in memories, arts and customs.

## **I – Document and understand industrial heritage structures, sites, areas and landscapes and their values**

3. Researching and documenting industrial structures, sites, landscapes and the related machinery, equipment, records or intangible aspects is essential to their identification, conservation, and the appreciation of their heritage significance and value. Human skills and knowledge involved in old industrial processes are a critically important resource in conservation and must be considered in the heritage evaluation process.
4. Researching and documenting industrial heritage sites and structures must address their historical, technological and socio-economical dimensions to provide an integrated base for conservation and management. It requires an interdisciplinary approach supported by interdisciplinary research and educational programmes to identify

the significance of industrial heritage sites or structures. It should benefit from a diversity of sources of expertise and information including site surveys and recording, historical and archaeological investigation, material and landscape analysis, oral history and/or research in public, corporate or private archives. Research and preservation of documentary records, company archives, building plans, and specimens of industrial products should be encouraged. The evaluation and assessment of documents should be undertaken by an appropriate specialist in the industry to which they relate to determine their heritage significance. The participation of communities and other stakeholders is also an integral part of this exercise.

5. Thorough knowledge of the industrial and socio-economic history of an area or country or their links to other parts of the world is necessary to understand the significance of industrial heritage sites or structures. Single industry context, typological or regional studies, with a comparative component, aimed at key industrial sectors or technologies are very useful in recognizing the heritage values inherent in individual structures, sites, areas or landscapes. They should be accessible and searchable by the public, scholars as well as managers.

## **II – Ensure effective protection and conservation of the industrial heritage structures, sites, areas and landscapes**

6. Appropriate policies, legal and administrative measures need to be adopted and adequately implemented to protect and ensure the conservation of industrial heritage sites and structures, including their machinery and records. These measures have to address the close relation between the industrial heritage, industrial production and the economy, in particular with respect to rules for corporations and investments, trades or intellectual property such as patents, and standards applicable to active industrial operations.
7. Integrated inventories and lists of structures, sites, areas, landscapes their setting and associated objects, documents, drawings and archives or intangible heritage should be developed and used as

part of these effective management and conservation policies and protection measures. These should benefit from a legal recognition, adequate conservation and management to ensure that their significance, integrity and authenticity are maintained. In the case of industrial heritage identified through fortuitous discovery, temporary protection should be granted to allow time necessary for proper heritage documentation and research.

8. In the case of active industrial structures or sites of heritage significance, it must be recognized that their continued use and function might carry some of their heritage significance and provide adequate conditions for their physical and economic sustainability as a living production or extraction facilities. Their specific technical characteristics and features need to be respected while implementing contemporary regulations such as building codes, environmental requirements or risk reduction strategies to address hazards of natural or human origin.
9. Protection measures should apply to buildings and their contents since completeness or functional integrity is especially important to the significance of industrial heritage structures and sites. Their heritage value may be greatly jeopardized or reduced if machinery or other significant components are removed, or if subsidiary elements which form part of a whole site are destroyed. Legal and administrative frameworks should be developed to enable authorities to respond quickly to the closure of operating industrial heritage sites and complexes to prevent removal or destruction of significant elements such as machinery, industrial objects or related records.

## **III – Conserve and maintain the industrial heritage structures, sites, areas and landscapes**

10. Appropriate original or alternative and adaptive use is the most frequent way and often the most sustainable way of ensuring the conservation of industrial heritage sites or structures. New uses should respect significant material, components and patterns of circulation and activity.

Specialist skills are necessary to ensure that the heritage significance is taken into account and respected in managing the sustainable use of these industrial heritage sites and structures.

Building codes, risk mitigation requirements, environmental or industrial regulations, and other standards should be implemented in an adapted way to take heritage dimensions into account when they are enforced through physical interventions.

11. Wherever possible, physical interventions should be reversible, and respect the age value and significant traces or marks. Changes should be documented. Reverting to a previous known state may be acceptable under exceptional circumstances for educational purposes, and must be based on thorough research and documentation. Dismantling and relocating are only acceptable in extraordinary cases when the destruction of the site is required by objectively proved overwhelming economic or social needs.
12. In case of prospective redundancy, decommissioning, and/or adaptation of industrial heritage sites or structures, the processes should be recorded including, for example, where components have to be demolished and machinery has to be removed. Their material form as well as their functioning and location as part of the industrial processes should be exhaustively documented. Oral and / or written stories of people connected with work processes should also be collected.

#### **IV– Present and communicate the heritage dimensions and values of industrial structures, sites, areas and landscapes to raise public and corporate awareness, and support training and research**

1. 13. The industrial heritage is a source of learning which needs to be communicated in its multiple dimensions. It illustrates important aspects of local, national and international history and interactions over times and cultures. It demonstrates the inventive talents related to scientific and technological developments, as well as social

and artistic movements. Public and corporate awareness and understanding for the industrial heritage are important means for its successful conservation.

14. Programmes and facilities such as visits of active industrial heritage sites and the presentation of their operations as well as the stories and intangible heritage associated with their history, machinery and industrial processes, industrial or city museums and interpretation centres, exhibitions, publications, websites, regional or trans-boundary itineraries should be developed and sustained as means to raise awareness and appreciation for the industrial heritage in the full richness of its meaning for contemporary societies. These should ideally be located at the heritage sites itself where the process of industrialisation has taken place and can be best communicated. Wherever possible, national and international institutions in the field of research and conservation of heritage should be empowered to use them as educational facilities for the general public and the professional communities.

**PARIS 2011**



PARIS 2011

## THE VALLETTA PRINCIPLES FOR THE SAFEGUARDING AND MANAGEMENT OF HISTORIC CITIES, TOWNS AND URBAN AREAS

Adopted by the 17th ICOMOS General Assembly on 28 November 2011

### Preamble

Humanity today must confront a number of changes. These changes concern human settlements, in general, and historic towns and urban areas in particular. The globalization of markets and methods of production cause shifts in population between regions and towards towns, especially large cities. Changes in political governance and in business practices require new structures and new conditions in towns and urban areas. These are also necessary to counteract segregation and social rootlessness as part of attempts to reinforce identity.

Within what is now an international framework of reflection on urban conservation, there is an ever-increasing awareness of these new demands. The organizations charged with the conservation of heritage and the enhancement of its value need to develop their skills, their tools, their attitudes and, in many cases, their role in the planning process.

CIVVIH (ICOMOS - International Committee on Historic Towns and Villages) has therefore updated the approaches and considerations contained in the Washington Charter (1987) and the Nairobi Recommendation (1976), based on the existing set of reference documents. CIVVIH has redefined the objectives, attitudes and tools needed. It has taken into consideration the significant evolution in definitions and methodologies concerning the safeguarding and management of historic towns and urban areas.

The modifications reflect a greater awareness of the issue of historic heritage on a regional scale rather than just confined to urban areas; of intangible values such as continuity and identity; of traditional land use, the role of public space in communal interactions, and of other socioeconomic factors such as integration and environmental factors.



Questions around the role of landscape as common ground, or conceptualizing the townscape, including its topography and skyline, as a whole, seem more important than before. Another important modification, particularly in fast-growing cities, takes into account the problems of large-scale developments, which alter the traditional lot sizes that help to define historic urban morphology.

In this sense, it is fundamental to consider heritage as an essential resource, as part of the urban ecosystem. This concept must be strictly respected in order to ensure harmonious development of historic towns and their settings.

The notion of sustainable development has gained such importance that many directives on architectural planning and interventions are now based on policies designed to limit urban expansion and to preserve urban heritage.

The main objective of this document is to propose principles and strategies applicable to every intervention in historic towns and urban areas. These principles and strategies are meant to safeguard the values of historic towns and their settings, as well as their integration into the social, cultural and economic life of our times.

These interventions must ensure respect for tangible and intangible heritage values, as well as for the quality of life of inhabitants.

This present document for the safeguarding of historic towns and urban areas and their settings, is divided into four parts:

- 1 – Definitions
- 2 – Aspects of change (Challenges)
- 3 – Intervention criteria
- 4 – Proposals and strategies

## 1 – Definitions

### a – Historic towns and urban areas

Historic towns and urban areas are made up of tangible and intangible elements. The tangible elements include, in addition to the urban structure, architectural elements, the landscapes within and around the town, archaeological remains, panoramas, skylines, view-lines and landmark sites. Intangible elements include activities, symbolic and historic functions, cultural practices, traditions, memories, and cultural references that constitute the substance of their historic value.

Historic towns and urban areas are spatial structures that express the evolution of a society and of its cultural identity. They are an integral part of a broader natural or man-made context and the two must be considered inseparable.

Historic towns and urban areas are living evidence of the past that formed them. Historical or traditional areas form part of daily human life. Their protection and integration into contemporary society are the basis for town-planning and land development.

### b – Setting

Setting means the natural and/or man-made contexts (in which the historic urban heritage is located) that influence the static or dynamic way these areas are perceived, experienced and/or enjoyed, or which are directly linked to them socially, economically or culturally.

### c – Safeguarding

The safeguarding of historic towns and urban areas, and their surroundings, includes the necessary procedures for their protection, conservation, enhancement and management as well as for their coherent development and their harmonious adaptation to contemporary life.

### d – Protected urban area

A protected urban area is any part of a town that represents a historical period or stage of development of the town. It includes monuments and authentic urban fabric, in which buildings express the cultural values for which the place is protected.

The protection may also include the historical development of the town and support its characteristic civic, religious and social functions.

#### **e – Buffer zone**

A buffer zone is a well-defined zone outside the protected area whose role is to shield the cultural values of the protected zone from the impact of activities in its surroundings. This impact can be physical, visual or social.

#### **f – Management Plan**

A Management Plan is a document specifying in detail all the strategies and tools to be used for heritage protection and which at the same time responds to the needs of contemporary life. It contains legislative, financial, administrative and conservation documents, as well as Conservation and Monitoring Plans.

#### **g – Spirit of place**

Spirit of place is defined as the tangible and intangible, the physical and the spiritual elements that give the area its specific identity, meaning, emotion and mystery. The spirit creates the space and at the same time the space constructs and structures this spirit (Quebec Declaration, 2008).

## **2 – Aspects of Change**

Historic towns and urban areas, as living organisms, are subject to continual change. These changes affect all the elements of the town (natural, human, tangible and intangible).

Change, when appropriately managed, can be an opportunity to improve the quality of historic towns and urban areas on the basis of their historical characteristics.

#### **a – Change and the natural environment**

The Washington Charter has already focused on the problems linked to changes in the natural environment: “Historic towns (and their settings) should be protected against natural disasters and nuisances such as pollution and vibrations in order to safeguard the heritage and for the security and well-being of the residents”. (Washington Charter).

In historic towns and urban areas, change should be based on respect for natural balance, avoiding the destruction of natural resources, waste of energy and disruption in the balance of natural cycles.

Change must be used to: improve the environmental context in historic towns and urban areas; improve the quality of air, water and soil; foster the spread and accessibility of green spaces; and to avoid undue pressure on natural resources.

Historic towns and their settings must be protected from the effects of climate change and from increasingly frequent natural disasters.

Climate change can have devastating consequences for historic towns and urban areas because, in addition to the fragility of the urban fabric, many buildings are becoming obsolete, requiring high levels of expenditure to tackle problems arising from climate change.

The aim should be to take advantage of strategies arising from growing global awareness of climate change and to apply them appropriately to the challenges of safeguarding historic towns.

#### **b – Change and the built environment**

On the subject of modern architecture, the Washington Charter states: “The introduction of contemporary elements in harmony with the surroundings should not be discouraged since such features can contribute to the enrichment of an area”.

The introduction of contemporary architectural elements must respect the values of the site and its setting. It can contribute to the enrichment of the town, bringing alive the value of urban continuity.

The basis of appropriate architectural interventions in spatial, visual, intangible and functional terms should be respect for historical values, patterns and layers.

New architecture must be consistent with the spatial organisation of the historic area and respectful of its traditional morphology while at the same time being a valid expression of the architectural trends of its time and place. Regardless of style and expression, all new architecture should avoid the negative effects of drastic or excessive contrasts and of fragmentation and interruptions in the continuity of the urban fabric and space.



Priority must be given to a continuity of composition that does not adversely affect the existing architecture but at the same time allows a discerning creativity that embraces the spirit of the place.

Architects and urban planners must be encouraged to acquire a deep understanding of the historic urban context.

### **c – Change in use and social environment**

The loss and/or substitution of traditional uses and functions, such as the specific way of life of a local community, can have major negative impacts on historic towns and urban areas. If the nature of these changes is not recognised, it can lead to the displacement of communities and the disappearance of cultural practices, and subsequent loss of identity and character for these abandoned places. It can result in the transformation of historic towns and urban areas into areas with a single function devoted to tourism and leisure and not suitable for day-to-day living.

Conserving a historic town requires efforts to maintain traditional practices and to protect the indigenous population.

It is also important to control the gentrification process arising from rent increases and the deterioration of the town or area's housing and public space.

It is important to recognise that the process of gentrification can affect communities and lead to the loss of a place's liveability and, ultimately, its character.

Retention of the traditional cultural and economic diversity of each place is essential, especially when it is characteristic of the place.

Historic towns and urban areas run the risk of becoming a consumer product for mass tourism, which may result in the loss of their authenticity and heritage value.

New activities must therefore be carefully managed to avoid secondary negative effects such as transport conflicts or traffic congestion.

### **d – Change and intangible heritage**

The preservation of intangible heritage is as important as the conservation and protection of the built environment.

The intangible elements that contribute to the identity and spirit of places need to be established and preserved, since they help in determining the character of an area and its spirit.

## **3 – Intervention Criteria**

### **a – Values**

All interventions in historic towns and urban areas must respect and refer to their tangible and intangible cultural values.

### **b – Quality**

Every intervention in historic towns and urban areas must aim to improve the quality of life of the local residents and the quality of the environment.

### **c – Quantity**

An accumulation of changes could have a negative effect on a historic town and its values.

Major quantitative and qualitative changes should be avoided, unless they will clearly result in the improvement of the urban environment and its cultural values.

Changes that are inherent to urban growth must be controlled and carefully managed to minimise physical and visual effects on the townscape and architectural fabric.

### **d – Coherence**

On 'coherence' article 3 of the Nairobi Recommendation states:

"Every historic area and its surroundings should be considered in their totality as a coherent whole whose balance and specific nature depend on the fusion of the parts of which it is composed and which include human activities as much as the buildings, the spatial organization and the surroundings. All valid elements, including human activities, however modest, thus have significance in relation to the whole which must not be disregarded".

Historic towns and urban areas as well as their settings must be considered in their totality.

Their balance and nature depend on their constituent parts.

However, the safeguarding of historic towns and urban areas must be an integral part of a general understanding of the urban structure and its surroundings. This requires coherent economic and social development policies that take historic towns into account at all planning levels, whilst always respecting their social fabric and cultural diversity.

### **e – Balance and compatibility**

The safeguarding of historic towns must include, as a mandatory condition, the preservation of fundamental spatial, environmental, social, cultural and economic balances. This requires actions that allow the urban structure to retain the original residents and to welcome new arrivals (either as residents or as users of the historic town), as well as to aid development, without causing congestion.

### **f – Time**

The speed of change is a parameter to be controlled. Excessive speed of change can adversely affect the integrity of all the values of a historic town.

The extent and frequency of intervention must be embedded in and compatible with feasibility and planning documents and studies, as well as adhering to transparent and regulated intervention procedures.

### **g – Method and scientific discipline**

“Knowledge of the history of a historic town or urban area should be expanded through archaeological investigation and appropriate preservation of archaeological findings”. (Washington Charter)

The safeguarding and management of a historic town or urban area must be guided by prudence, a systematic approach and discipline, in accordance with the principles of sustainable development.

Safeguarding and management must be based on preliminary multidisciplinary studies, in order to determine the urban heritage elements and values to be conserved. It is imperative to have a profound knowledge of the site and its setting to inform any safeguarding action.

Continuous monitoring and maintenance is essential to safeguard a historic town or urban area effectively

Proper planning requires up-to-date precise documentation and recording (context analysis, study at different scales, inventory of component parts and of impact, history of the town and its phases of evolution, etc.).

Direct consultation and continuous dialogue with the residents and other stakeholders is indispensable because the safeguarding of their historic town or area concerns them first and foremost.

### **h – Governance**

Good governance makes provision for organizing broad orchestration amongst all stakeholders: elected authorities, municipal services, public administrations, experts, professional organizations, voluntary bodies, universities, residents, etc. This is essential for the successful safeguarding, rehabilitation and sustainable development of historic towns and urban areas.

Participation by the residents can be facilitated through distributing information, awareness raising and training. The traditional systems of urban governance should examine all aspects of cultural and social diversity, so as to establish new democratic institutions to suit the new reality.

Procedures for urban planning and safeguarding historic cities must provide sufficient information and time for residents to give fully informed responses.

Safeguarding needs to be encouraged and financial measures put in place, in order to facilitate partnerships with players from the private sector in the conservation and restoration of the built environment.

### **i – Multidisciplinarity and cooperation**

“Planning for the conservation of historic towns and urban areas should be preceded by multidisciplinary studies.” (Washington Charter)

From the beginning of preliminary studies, the safeguarding of historic towns should be based on an effective collaboration between specialists of many different disciplines, and undertaken with the cooperation of researchers, public services, private enterprises and the broader public.

These studies should lead to concrete proposals that can be taken up by political decision-makers, social and economic agents and residents.

### **j – Cultural diversity**

Within the context of urban conservation planning, the cultural diversity of the different communities that have inhabited historic towns over the course of time must be respected and valued.

It is essential to establish a sensitive and shared balance in order to maintain their historical heritage in the fullness of its cultural diversity.

## 4 – Proposals and Strategies

### a – Elements to be preserved

- 1 – The authenticity and integrity of historic towns, whose essential character is expressed by the nature and coherence of all their tangible and intangible elements, notably:
  - a – Urban patterns as defined by the street grid, the lots, the green spaces and the relationships between buildings and green and open spaces;
  - b – The form and appearance, interior and exterior, of buildings as defined by their structure, volume, style, scale, materials, colour and decoration;
  - c – The relationship between the town or urban area and its surrounding setting, both natural and man-made;” (Washington Charter)
  - d – The various functions that the town or urban area has acquired over time;
  - e – Cultural traditions, traditional techniques, spirit of place and everything that contributes to the identity of a place;
- 2 – The relationships between the site in its totality, its constituent parts, the context of the site, and the parts that make up this context;
- 3 – Social fabric, cultural diversity;
- 4 – Non-renewable resources, minimising their consumption and encouraging their reuse and recycling.

### b – New functions

“New functions and activities should be compatible with the character of the historic towns or urban area.” (Washington Charter)

The introduction of new activities must not compromise the survival of traditional activities or anything that supports the daily life of the local inhabitants. This could help to preserve the historical cultural diversity and plurality, some of the most valuable elements in this context.

Before introducing a new activity, it is necessary to consider the number of users involved, the length of utilization, compatibility with other existing activities and the impact on traditional local practices.

Such new functions must also satisfy the need for sustainable development, in line with the concept of the historic town as a unique and irreplaceable ecosystem.

### c – Contemporary architecture

When it is necessary to construct new buildings or to adapt existing ones, contemporary architecture must be coherent with the existing spatial layout in historic towns as in the rest of the urban environment.

Contemporary architecture should find its expression while respecting the scale of the site, and have a clear rapport with existing architecture and the development patterns of its context.

“Analysis of the urban context should precede any new construction not only so as to define the general character of the group of buildings but also to analyse its dominant features, e.g. the harmony of heights, colours, materials and forms, constants in the way the façades and roofs are built, the relationship between the volume of buildings and the spatial volume, as well as their average proportions and their position. Particular attention should be given to the size of the lots since there is a danger that any reorganization of the lots may cause a change of mass which could be deleterious to the harmony of the whole “ (Nairobi Recommendation art. 28).

Perspectives, views, focal points and visual corridors are integral parts of the perception of historic spaces. They must be respected in the event of new interventions. Before any intervention, the existing context should be carefully analysed and documented. View cones, both to and from new constructions, should be identified, studied and maintained.

The introduction of a new building into a historical context or landscape must be evaluated from a formal and functional point of view, especially when it is designated for new activities.

### d – Public space

Public space in historic towns is not just an essential resource for circulation, but is also a place for contemplation, learning and enjoyment of the town. Its design and layout, including the choice of street furniture, as well as its management, must protect its character and beauty, and promote its use as a public place dedicated to social communication.

The balance between public open space and the dense built environment must be carefully analyzed and controlled in the event of new interventions and new uses.

### **e – Facilities and modifications**

Urban planning to safeguard historic towns must take into consideration the residents' need for facilities.

The integration of new facilities into historic buildings is a challenge that local authorities must not ignore.

### **f – Mobility**

“Traffic inside a historic town or urban area must be strictly controlled by regulations.” (Washington Charter)

“When urban or regional planning provides for the construction of major motorways, they must not penetrate a historic town or urban area, but they should improve access to them.” (Washington Charter)

Most historic towns and urban areas were designed for pedestrians and slow forms of transport. Gradually these places were invaded by the car, causing their degradation. At the same time, quality of life has reduced.

Traffic infrastructure (car parks, subway stations, etc) must be planned in ways that will not damage the historic fabric or its environment. A historic town should encourage the creation of transport with a light footprint.

It is important to encourage pedestrian circulation. To achieve this, traffic should be drastically limited and parking facilities reduced. At the same time, sustainable, non-polluting public transport systems need to be introduced, and soft mobility promoted.

Roadways should be studied and planned to give priority to pedestrians. Parking facilities should preferably be located outside protected zones and, if possible, outside buffer zones.

Underground infrastructure, such as subways, must be planned so as not to damage historic or archaeological fabric or its environment.

Major highway networks must avoid protected areas and buffer zones.

### **g – Tourism**

Tourism can play a positive role in the development and revitalisation of historic towns and urban areas. The development of tourism in historic

towns should be based on the enhancement of monuments and open spaces; on respect and support for local community identity and its culture and traditional activities; and on the safeguarding of regional and environmental character. Tourism activity must respect and not interfere with the daily life of residents.

Too great an influx of tourists is a danger for the preservation of monuments and historic areas.

Conservation and management plans must take into account the expected impact of tourism, and regulate the process, for the benefit of the heritage and of local residents.

### **h – Risks**

“Whatever the nature of a disaster affecting a historic town or urban area, preventative and repair measures must be adapted to the specific character of the properties concerned.” (Washington Charter)

Conservation plans offer an opportunity to improve risk preparedness and to promote environmental management and the principles of sustainability.

### **i – Energy saving**

All interventions in historic towns and urban areas, while respecting historic heritage characteristics, should aim to improve energy efficiency and to reduce pollutants.

The use of renewable energy resources should be enhanced.

Any new construction in historic areas must be energy efficient. Urban green spaces, green corridors and other measures should be adopted to avoid urban heat islands.

### **j – Participation**

“The participation and the involvement of the residents - and all local interest groups - are essential for the success of the conservation programme and should be encouraged. The conservation of historic towns and urban areas concerns their residents first of all.” (Washington Charter, art 3).

Planning in historic urban areas must be a participatory process, involving all stakeholders.

In order to encourage their participation and involvement, a general information programme should be set up for all residents, beginning with children of school age. The actions of conservation associations must be encouraged, and financial measures put in place, to facilitate the conservation and restoration of the built environment.

Mutual understanding, based on public awareness, and the search for common objectives between local communities and professional groups, is the basis of the successful conservation, revitalization and development of historic towns.

Information technology enables direct and immediate communication. This allows for active and responsible participation by local groups. Authorities must be encouraged to take an interest in the safeguarding of historic towns and urban areas, in order to establish financial measures which will enable management and improvement plans to succeed.

### **k – Conservation Plan**

“The conservation plan should aim at ensuring a harmonious relationship between historic urban areas ...” (Washington Charter art. 5). It covers both tangible and intangible elements, in order to protect a place’s identity without impeding its evolution.

The principal objectives of the conservation plan “should be clearly stated as should the legal, administrative and financial measures necessary to attain them.” (Washington Charter art. 5)

A conservation plan must be based on urban planning for the whole town, including analysis of archaeological, historical, architectural, technical, sociological and economical values. It should define a conservation project, and be combined with a management plan and followed by permanent monitoring.

The conservation plan must determine the terms, rules, objectives and outcomes of any changes. It “should determine which buildings - and spaces - must be preserved, which should be preserved under certain circumstances and which, “under quite exceptional circumstances, might be expendable.” (Washington Charter).

Before any intervention, existing conditions should be rigorously documented.

The conservation plan must identify and protect the elements contributing to the values and character of the town, as well as the components that enrich and/or demonstrate the character of the historic town and urban area.

The proposals in the conservation plan must be articulated in a realistic fashion, from the legislative, financial and economic point of view, as well as with regard to the required standards and restrictions.

“The Conservation Plan should be supported by the residents of the historic area.” (Washington Charter art.5).

When there is no conservation plan, all necessary conservation and development activities in a historic town must be carried out in accordance with the principles and objectives of conservation and enhancement.

### **l – Management Plan**

An effective management system should be devised according to the type and characteristics of each historic town and urban area, and their cultural and natural context. It should integrate traditional practices, and be co-ordinated with other urban and regional planning tools in force.

A management plan is based on the knowledge, conservation and enhancement of tangible and intangible resources.

Therefore it must:

- determine the cultural values;
- identify stakeholders and their values;
- identify potential conflicts;
- determine conservation targets;
- determine legal, financial, administrative and technical methods and tools;
- understand strengths, weaknesses, opportunities and threats;
- define suitable strategies, deadlines for the work, and specific actions.

The production of such a management plan should be a participatory process.

In addition to the information provided by local authorities, officials, field survey and detailed documentation, the Plan should include, as an appendix, the conclusions from stakeholder discussions and an analysis of the conflicts arising in these inherently contradictory debates.

## **Follow Up**

These recommendations are the outcome of collaborative work by CIVVIH, which intends them as a contribution to the wider discussions being led by ICOMOS.

This is an open source document that can be updated in the light of the evolution of the issues discussed.

<https://www.icomos.org/en/resources/charters-and-texts>









## THE NAMUR DECLARATION

The Ministers of The States Parties to the European Cultural Convention Meeting  
in Namur on 23-24 April 2015

- i. Welcoming the decision of the Belgian Government to bring them together fourteen years after the Portoroz conference (Slovenia) in 2001;
- ii. Recognising the decisive contribution of the Council of Europe, in particular through the conventions which it began drawing up over 40 years ago for the protection, conservation and enhancement of heritage and which reflect this specifically European field of excellence;
- iii. Welcoming the European Union's efforts to give greater consideration to cultural heritage in its areas of expertise, notably in the Communication of the European Commission of 22 July 2014 "Towards an integrated approach to cultural heritage for Europe" and the Conclusions on participatory governance of cultural heritage adopted on 25 November 2014 by the Council of Ministers of the European Union, and the convergence of these efforts with the Council of Europe's work;
- iv. Thus wishing to mark the 40th anniversary of the European Charter of the Architectural Heritage adopted by the Committee of Ministers of the Council of Europe on 26 September 1975, the 30th anniversary of the Convention for the Protection of the Architectural Heritage of Europe, the 15th anniversary of the European Landscape Convention and the 10th anniversary of the Framework Convention on the Value of Cultural Heritage for Society;
- v. Considering that cultural heritage is a group of resources inherited from the past which people identify, independently of ownership, as a reflection and expression of their constantly evolving values, beliefs, knowledge and traditions, including all aspects of the environment resulting from the interaction between people and places through time;
- vi. Noting with satisfaction the support given to this approach by the actors of civil society which have been associated with preparatory work;
- vii. Noting the contribution of culture and cultural heritage to sustainable development, of which they form the "fourth pillar";
- viii. Resolved to continue and intensify their co-operation in order to provide responses that meet with the challenges facing the conservation, enhancement and use of heritage as a fundamental right at the beginning of the 21st century,



## **I. ADOPT THE FOLLOWING DECLARATION:**

1. Climate change, demographic changes, migration, political, economic, financial and social crises are having a significant impact on our societies and heritage. We need to be aware of these challenges and work together to prevent a development where our societies are weakened and lack points of reference, are tempted to adopt inward-looking attitudes, are experiencing an erosion of traditional bonds and sometimes risk rupturing or imploding.
2. Cultural heritage is a key component of the European identity; it is of general public interest and its transmission to future generations is a shared responsibility; it is a unique resource, fragile, non-renewable and non-relocatable, contributing to the attractiveness and the development of Europe and, crucially, to the creation of a more peaceful, just and cohesive society.
3. A Strategy for redefining the place and role of cultural heritage in Europe is therefore a necessary response to the current challenges in the light of the changing European socio-economic and cultural context.
4. This Strategy:
  - 4.1 should draw on the core values of the Council of Europe: democracy, respect for human rights and fundamental freedoms, openness and dialogue, equal dignity of all persons, mutual respect and sensitivity to diversity;
  - 4.2 should promote a shared and unifying approach to cultural heritage management, based on an effective legal framework for the integrated conservation of heritage, and involving all the major players, institutional and other, and the representatives of professionals and civil society, at international, national and local level;
  - 4.3 should offer a vision and a framework for the next ten years, identify actions and projects that could have a lasting impact in Member States and be implemented primarily through existing instruments and tools, in particular the conventions, updating and developing them if necessary;

4.4 should focus on the following priorities:

- the contribution of heritage to the improvement of European citizens' quality of life and living environment;
- the contribution of heritage to Europe's attractiveness and prosperity, based on the expression of its identities and cultural diversity;
- education and life-long training;
- participatory governance in the heritage field;

4.5 should be guided by the proposed themes identified in the Guidelines for the European Cultural Heritage Strategy for the 21st century appended to the present Declaration, of which they form an integral part;

4.6 should include appropriate monitoring and evaluation methods using existing tools and instruments, in particular the conventions;

## **II. REQUEST THE COMMITTEE OF MINISTERS OF THE COUNCIL OF EUROPE:**

5. to entrust the drafting and follow-up of the implementation of this Strategy to the Steering Committee for Culture, Heritage and Landscape of the Council of Europe, and to give it the resources to complete this task;
6. to take the appropriate decisions to this effect in the context of the Council of Europe's programme and budget for 2016-2017;
7. to adopt the Strategy preferably as a recommendation of the Committee of Ministers to member States by the end of 2016;

## **III. RECOGNISE THAT EFFORTS TO PROMOTE A EUROPEAN HERITAGE STRATEGY SHOULD BRING TOGETHER A MULTITUDE OF PLAYERS AND TO THIS END:**

8. invite the European Union to be involved in the development and implementation of the Strategy, both at European and member State level;

9. welcome, as best practice, the idea of the Council of the European Union to organise a European Heritage Year, and ask that the Council of Europe and all States Parties to the European Cultural Convention be invited to participate;
10. invite those Member States which have not yet done so to sign and ratify the following four conventions: the Convention for the Protection of the Architectural Heritage of Europe, the European Convention on the Protection of the Archaeological Heritage (revised), the European Landscape Convention, the Framework Convention on the Value of Cultural Heritage for Society;
11. also invite UNESCO and ICCROM to co-operate more widely with the European institutions in order to promote the exchange of experience and best practices, and to create synergies with other regions of the world;
12. recall the importance of developing this future strategy with the involvement of civil society actors and organisations active in the heritage field including the networks of cities.

#### *Appendix to the declaration*

### **Guidelines for the European Cultural Heritage Strategy for the 21st century**

It will be up to each country to implement the Strategy according to the competences and responsibilities specific to each level of government and the relevant legislation, while giving priority to those themes and recommended courses of action which best match their own concerns or objectives, and at the same time endeavouring to implement the Strategy as a whole in a harmonious, integrated and coherent manner.

The following guidelines suggest unifying, consensual themes while at the same time respecting differences in the way heritage and certain issues are perceived by the various states and parties involved. They identify operational priorities, which should be implemented using the Council of Europe instruments and tools available:

- the conventions, resolutions and recommendations developed by the Council of Europe since 1969; the databases, knowledge bases and

institutional networks (HEREIN, ELCIS and Compendium of Cultural Policies);

- activities conducted with local entities in the spirit of the Faro Framework Convention;
- the Technical Co-operation and Consultancy Programme related to the integrated conservation of the cultural heritage;
- current thinking on the contribution of digital technology to all the suggested themes.

Account should also be taken of the European Union projects which concern cultural heritage, through the various EU sectorial policies.

The suggested unifying and consensual themes are as follows:

#### ■ **HERITAGE AND CITIZENSHIP**

- Issues: establishing good governance and promoting participatory management for the identification and management of cultural heritage; optimising the implementation of the conventions; promoting a sensorial and sensitive approach to heritage more in harmony with the population's experience;
- Guidelines: develop education and training for all in the field of cultural heritage; get all the partners to work together; involve civil society and elected representatives more; educate and raise awareness about heritage rights and responsibilities; enable citizens to develop or regain a sense of ownership of heritage; pursue actions in the spirit of Faro; engage in dialogue and establish partnerships with national and international institutions, and with NGOs; contextualise the conventions and other reference texts, ensuring better implementation.

#### ■ **HERITAGE AND SOCIETIES**

- Issues: living in peace, improving quality of life and the living environment; contributing to people's well-being, to the good health of individuals, preserving the collective memory;
- Guidelines: take into account the everyday heritage that constitutes people's primary living environment; use heritage to connect or even reconcile human beings with life, with their fellow citizens, with their environment and history; recognise cultural

heritage as an ideal means of transmitting values through the generations; promote the care of heritage by actors and the more autonomous communities of citizens, with the support of experts; fight the trend towards uniformity.

#### ■ HERITAGE AND THE ECONOMY

- Issues: building a more inclusive and cohesive society; developing prosperity; promoting public well-being;
- Guidelines: consider heritage as a source of reflection and inspiration; use heritage resources in respectful, creative and innovative ways; increase the attractiveness of Europe and its expertise in the field of cultural heritage; mitigate the intensive use and excessive exploitation of certain heritage sites; diversify the provision in terms of heritage sites; increase access to cultural heritage including through e-content; promote the use of cultural heritage for education, research, scientific and technical co-operation and tourism; broaden the scope of the European cultural routes; promote cultural connections between citizens and communities (twinning) based on cultural heritage; update the European Heritage Days portal as an e-heritage platform; promote augmented reality techniques based on a genuine knowledge of cultural heritage; consider alternative financing models or instruments; encourage the re-use and regeneration of heritage to create jobs and utilise local resources.

#### ■ HERITAGE AND KNOWLEDGE

- Issues: fostering a knowledge society; ensuring the maintenance and transmission of knowledge, methods and know-how; increasing awareness about, and a sense of responsibility for, cultural heritage and the values it conveys; ensuring access to life-long training; combatting social dumping where heritage-related labour is concerned;
- Guidelines: support the exchange of knowledge, ideas and best practice; develop and co-ordinate the actions of the European Union, the Council of Europe, and ICCROM; promote the exchange of experts and expertise, apprentices, researchers, students (expand the existing exchange programmes) and volunteers

(active at archaeological sites or monument restoration projects for example); work on evidence-based policy development.

#### ■ HERITAGE AND TERRITORIAL GOVERNANCE

- Issues: defining the role of institutions and the responsibility of citizens to work together to improve the surroundings and quality of life of all members of society; introducing heritage management that is conducive to living together in harmony, well-being and development;
- Guidelines: in the spirit of the Florence convention, affirm territory as an entity that is remarkable for the character of its heritages and that may cross borders: specific landscape and environmental features, strong identity, sense of belonging shared by all members of the community, etc.; promote uniqueness as a driving force for the positive transformation of the living environment; promote innovative good spatial governance based on heritage as a resource; promote co-operation between territories in the field of transfrontier heritage.

#### ■ HERITAGE AND SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT

- Issues: providing the public sector with appropriate means, enabling it to be more effective in improving quality of life and the living environment;
- Guidelines: improve the public sector's cultural heritage management capacity so it can manage heritage as a real local and regional resource; promote cultural heritage as a factor in social and territorial cohesion and landscape quality; strengthen the role of cultural heritage in the development of public spaces, analyse the risks for cultural heritage; widen the scope of the technical co-operation and consultancy missions of the Council of Europe and make them more permanent in the field; use the European projects (European Union) while stressing the importance of heritage for other sectoral policies; develop partnerships with UNESCO, the European Union, and ICCROM in cultural heritage risk management.

<https://www.coe.int/en/web/culture-and-heritage/strategy-21>

**PARIS 2015**





PARIS 2015

## RECOMMENDATION CONCERNING THE PRESERVATION OF, AND ACCESS TO, DOCUMENTARY HERITAGE INCLUDING IN DIGITAL FORM

United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization, Paris, 17 November 2015

### PREAMBLE

The General Conference of the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization, meeting in Paris from 3 to 18 November 2015, at its 38th session,

**Considering** that documents produced and preserved over time, in all their analogue and digital forms through time and space, constitute the primary means of knowledge creation and expression, having an impact on all areas of humanity's civilization and its further progress,

**Also considering** that documentary heritage records the unfolding of human thought and events, the evolution of languages, cultures, peoples and their understanding of the world, **Underlining** the importance of documentary heritage to promote the sharing of knowledge for greater understanding and dialogue, in order to promote peace and respect for freedom, democracy, human rights and dignity,

**Noting** that the evolution of documentary heritage enables intercultural education and personal enrichment, scientific and technological progress and is a crucial resource for development,

**Considering at the same time** that the preservation of, and long-term accessibility to documentary heritage underpins fundamental freedoms of opinion, expression and information as human rights,

**Also considering** that universal access to documentary heritage must respect both the legitimate interests of rights-holders and the public interest in its preservation and accessibility,



**Recognizing** that aspects of the history and culture which exist in the form of documentary heritage may not be conveniently accessible,

**Recognizing also** that over time considerable parts of documentary heritage have disappeared due to natural or human disasters or are becoming inaccessible through rapid technological change, and **underlining** that lack of legislation impedes memory institutions to counter irreversible loss and impoverishment of that heritage,

**Recalling** that, in response to this challenge, UNESCO established the Memory of the World Programme in 1992 to increase awareness and protection of the world's documentary heritage, and to provide for its universal and permanent accessibility,

**Taking into account** the rapid evolution of technology, and the challenge of establishing models and processes for preserving digital heritage objects including complex ones, such as multi-media works, interactive hypermedia, online dialogues and dynamic data objects from complex systems, mobile content and future emerging formats,

**Also taking into account** the international standard-setting instruments and other relevant treaties and statements, as listed in the Appendix,

**Bearing in mind** the need for States, communities and individuals to take appropriate measures for the protection, preservation, accessibility and enhancement of the value of documentary heritage,

**Having decided** at its 37th session that this question should be the subject of a Recommendation to Member States,

Adopts, on this seventeenth day of November 2015, the present Recommendation:

## DEFINITIONS

For the purposes of this Recommendation, a **document** is an object comprising analogue or digital informational content and the carrier on which it resides. It is preservable and usually moveable. The content may comprise signs or codes (such as text), images (still or moving) and sounds, which can be copied or migrated. The carrier may have important aesthetic, cultural or technical qualities. The relationship between content and carrier may range from incidental to integral.

**Documentary heritage** comprises those single documents – or groups of documents – of significant and enduring value to a community, a culture, a country or to humanity generally, and whose deterioration or loss would be a harmful impoverishment. Significance of this heritage may become clear only with the passage of time. The world's documentary heritage is of global importance and responsibility to all, and should be fully preserved and protected for all, with due respect to and recognition of cultural mores and practicalities. It should be permanently accessible and re-usable by all without hindrance. It provides the means for understanding social, political, collective as well as personal history. It can help to underpin good governance and sustainable development. For each State, its documentary heritage reflects its memory and identity, and thus contributes to determine its place in the global community.

**Memory institutions** may include but are not limited to archives, libraries, museums and other educational, cultural and research organizations.

## 1. IDENTIFICATION OF DOCUMENTARY HERITAGE

- 1.1 Member States are encouraged to support their memory institutions in establishing selection, collection and preservation policies by research and consultation, guided by internationally established and defined standards regarding documentary heritage in their territories. The documents, fonds and collections should be managed in a way that ensures their preservation and accessibility over time, and assigns means of discovery, including cataloguing and metadata.
- 1.2 Policies, mechanisms and criteria for selecting, acquiring and de-selecting documentary heritage should be developed by memory institutions in coordination with civil society, taking into account not only key documents but also their contextual material, including social media. Selection criteria must be non-discriminatory and clearly defined. Selection must also be neutrally balanced with respect to knowledge fields, artistic expressions and historic eras. Because of their inherently temporary nature, decisions concerning the preservation of digital documents may need to be made at or before the time of creation.

- 1.3 Member States are encouraged to identify specific documentary heritage the survival of which is at potential or imminent risk, and draw it to the attention of competent bodies able to take appropriate preservation measures. They should support and strengthen their relevant memory institutions and, where practical and appropriate, encourage research communities and private owners to care for their own documentary heritage in the public interest. Similarly, public and private institutions should ensure professional care for the documents which they themselves create.
- 1.4 Member States should encourage the identification and nomination of significant documentary heritage to national, regional or international Memory of the World Registers as a means of raising awareness.
- 1.5 Member States are invited to develop training and capacity-building schemes as appropriate to ensure the identification, preservation and access to documentary heritage.

## 2. PRESERVATION OF DOCUMENTARY HERITAGE

- 2.1 Preservation of documentary heritage means encompassing techniques, treatments, procedures and technologies of any nature, preventive and remedial, aiming at the preservation of the documents and of the information contained therein.
- 2.2 Preservation is an ongoing process requiring the management of both analogue and digital objects and can be enhanced by scholarship, technology and science. Analogue carriers should be retained where they have continuing value as authentic originals, artefacts or information bearing objects. In the case of digital documents, action and intervention are desirable from before the point of creation and acquisition, in order to optimize further management, minimize costs and to properly manage the risks involved. Cooperation should be further encouraged among governments, memory institutions and the private sector.
- 2.3 In pursuing measures of preservation, integrity, authenticity and reliability should be the guiding principles. Concrete measures and actions should follow the international legislation and the

recommendations, guidelines, best practices and standards developed or supported by memory institutions. The Memory of the World Programme, should provide a platform to promote standards and share best practices.

- 2.4 Member States are encouraged to develop awareness-raising and capacity-building measures and policies as a key component of preservation, including promoting research as well as training for documentary heritage professionals and providing facilities for such. These should embrace curatorial best practices, current and emerging technologies, forensic skills and core competencies in relevant scholarship, science, technology and engineering, thereby raising awareness of the urgency of timely preservation action in a constantly changing environment.
- 2.5 The existence of possibly legitimate access restrictions on any part of the documentary heritage should not inhibit or limit the ability of memory institutions to take preservation action. Member States are invited to take this consideration into account while implementing this recommendation and through updating their relevant domestic legislation.
- 2.6 Member States that hold in their memory institutions collections originating in or of relevance to other States are encouraged to share digital programmes and copies of such heritage with the Parties concerned.
- 2.7 Member States should encourage consistency of best practice and preservation standards across memory institutions, including risk management, such as the degradation and theft of documents, and investment in appropriate technical infrastructure. This may include nationwide coordination and sharing of tasks among memory institutions, based on their existing roles, strengths and responsibilities.
- 2.8 Member States are encouraged to support memory institutions' participation in the development of international standards for preservation. Member States are further invited to encourage memory institutions to link with the appropriate professional associations to both enhance and share their technical knowledge, and contribute to the ongoing development of international standards.

2.9 Member States are invited to support the development of academic curricula for digital preservation, as well as networking activities at national, regional and international levels for more effective implementation of the Memory of the World Programme, and the promotion of exchanges of experiences among UNESCO Member States based on best practice models.

### **3. ACCESS TO DOCUMENTARY HERITAGE**

3.1 Member States are encouraged to provide appropriate legislative frameworks for memory institutions and ensure their necessary independence in preserving and providing access to documentary heritage, so as to sustain public trust in the scope of material selected, and the way in which it is preserved. The provision of access is visible evidence and justification of public expenditure on preservation.

3.2 Member States are urged to promote and facilitate maximum inclusive access to, and use of, documentary heritage by empowering memory institutions to provide accurate and up-to-date catalogues and finding aids, equitable person-to-person access services to the original documents, if necessary for research, Internet and web-based publications and portals, electronic and digitized content, using international best practice standards. Member States are further encouraged to support memory institutions in the development of international standards for access and use, using recognized standards that support interoperability. Whenever possible, content should be structured, machine-readable and linkable.

3.3 The avenues for providing access to documentary heritage are multiplying through the growth of information and communication technologies and the development of global networks among memory institutions and their partners. Member States should encourage and support the development of outreach programmes, including exhibitions, travelling presentations, radio and television programmes, publications, consumer products, online streaming, social media, lectures, educational programmes, special events and the digitization of content for downloading.

3.4 Programmes for access to documentary heritage may be facilitated by partnerships, including public-private ones. Member States are invited to encourage such arrangements if they are responsible and equitable.

3.5 Where restrictions to accessing documentary heritage are necessary to protect privacy, human safety, security, confidentiality or for other legitimate reasons, they should be clearly defined and stated and be of limited duration. They should be underpinned by appropriate national legislation or regulation by including an appeals mechanism against such decisions.

3.6 When updating or enacting new legislation which impacts on access to documentary heritage, Member States should consider the need to maximize such access while respecting the legitimate interests of the rights-holders. Member States are encouraged to extend this public access to countries with which they have shared a historical documentary heritage.

3.7 Member States are invited to enhance the visibility and accessibility of their documentary heritage through the outreach activities and publications of the Memory of the World Programme as appropriate, with investment in digitization of content for access purposes now being one of its key components. Member States should support and promote public domain access, and wherever possible, encourage the use of public licensing and open access solutions.

### **4. POLICY MEASURES**

4.1 Member States are urged to consider their documentary heritage as an invaluable asset and to apply this perspective in national legislation, development policies and agendas. They are further encouraged to recognize the long-term need for new investment in the preservation of different types of originals in analogue format, in digital infrastructure and skills, and to adequately endow memory institutions.

4.2 At the same time, in the context of their national heritage policies, Member States are encouraged to take a global view of the needs of memory institutions, beyond the practicalities of infrastructure, and

encourage logical partnerships and cost sharing with other entities in setting up shared facilities, processes and services.

- 4.3 Private and local institutions and individuals holding valuable collections need public encouragement and support as well as adequate visibility in national directories.
- 4.4 Member States should improve access to documentary heritage by encouraging the development of new forms and tools of education and research on documentary heritage and their presence in the public domain.
- 4.5 Through legislation and policy, Member States are encouraged to create in a participatory approach a stable, enabling environment that will give incentives to sponsors, foundations and other external parties to support memory institutions and, with them, to invest in the preservation, accessibility and use of documentary heritage in the public interest.
- 4.6 Member States are encouraged to periodically review copyright codes and legal deposit regimes to ensure they are fully effective, with limitations and exceptions, for preserving and accessing documentary heritage in all its forms. Effectiveness would also profit from the strengthening and harmonization of legislation and alignment of policies among Member States.
- 4.7 Where preserving and accessing documentary heritage requires the use of software or other proprietary technology not covered by copyright exceptions, Member States are invited to facilitate access to proprietary codes, keys and unlocked versions of technology on a non-profit basis.
- 4.8 In order to facilitate optimal exchange of data, Member States should encourage the development and use of internationally recognized open source software and standardized interfaces for managing digital documentary heritage, and seek the cooperation of software and hardware developers in extracting data and content from proprietary technologies. Likewise, their memory institutions should aim for international standardization and interchangeability of cataloguing methods and standards.

4.9 Member States are invited to support and develop policies and initiatives affecting documentary heritage, including monitoring the status of documentary heritage inscribed on the Memory of the World Registers.

4.10 Member States are encouraged to contribute building synergies between the Memory of the World Programme and other heritage programmes in order to assure further coherence of actions.

## 5. NATIONAL AND INTERNATIONAL COOPERATION

5.1 In view of the need to intensify national and international cooperation and exchanges, in particular through the pooling of human and material resources to assist research and the protection and preservation of documentary heritage, Member States should support the exchange of research data, publications, and information; the training and exchange of specialist personnel and equipment. They should promote the organization of meetings, study courses and working groups on particular subjects, such as cataloguing, risk management, identification of endangered documentary heritage and modern research.

5.2 Member States should encourage cooperation with international and regional professional associations, institutions and organizations concerned with documentary heritage preservation and access, with a view to implementing bilateral or multilateral research projects and publishing guidelines, policies and best practice models.

5.3 Member States are invited to facilitate the exchange between countries of copies of documentary heritage that relate to their own culture, shared history or heritage, and of other identified documentary heritage, in particular due to their shared and entangled historical nature or in the framework of the reconstitution of dispersed original documents, as appropriate, which has been the object of preservation work in another country. The exchange of copies will have no implications on the ownership of originals.

5.4 To the best of their ability, Member States should take all appropriate measures to safeguard their documentary heritage against all human

and natural dangers to which it is exposed, including the risks deriving from armed conflicts. Likewise, they should refrain from acts likely to damage documentary heritage or diminish its value or impede its dissemination or use, whether it is to be found on the territory of one Member State or on the territory of other States.

- 5.5 Member States are encouraged to engage in international cooperation to safeguard endangered documentary heritage through digitization or other means following a request made by another Member State.
- 5.6 Member States are invited to strengthen their cooperation with the Memory of the World Programme through their memory institutions by establishing national Memory of the World committees and registers, when deemed appropriate.

\*\*\*

The General Conference recommends that Member States should apply the above provisions concerning the preservation of and access to documentary heritage by taking whatever legislative or policy measures or other steps that may be required, in conformity with the constitutional practice of each State, to give effect, within their respective territories to the principles, measures and norms set forth in this Recommendation.

The General Conference recommends that Member States bring this Recommendation to the attention of the appropriate authorities and bodies.

The General Conference recommends that Member States should report to it, by the dates and in a manner to be determined by it, on the action they have taken to give effect to this Recommendation.

## APPENDIX

International instruments covering the protection of elements of documentary heritage:

### I. UNESCO Conventions and Recommendations

Convention for the Protection of Cultural Property in the Event of Armed Conflict (1954);

Convention on the Means of Prohibiting and Preventing the Illicit Import, Export and Transfer of Ownership of Cultural Property (1970);

Convention for the Protection of the World Cultural and Natural Heritage (1972);

Convention for the Safeguarding of the Intangible Cultural Heritage (2003);

Convention on the Protection and Promotion of the Diversity of Cultural Expressions (2005);

Recommendation for the Safeguarding and Preservation of Moving Images (1980);

Recommendation concerning the Promotion and Use of Multilingualism and Universal Access to Cyberspace (2003);

Charter on the Preservation of Digital Heritage (2003).

### II. Declarations and other documents

The Universal Declaration on Archives (2010) accepted by the International Council on Archives (ICA), and endorsed by the 36th session of the General Conference of UNESCO (2011);

Warsaw Declaration: 'Culture – Memory – Identities' (2011);

The Moscow Declaration on Digital Information Preservation (2011) adopted by the International Conference on "Preservation of Digital Information in the Information Society: Problems and Prospects" organized by the UNESCO Information for All Programme (IFAP);

UNESCO/UBC Vancouver Declaration “The Memory of the World in the Digital Age: Digitization and Preservation” (2012);

The IFLA (International Federation of Library Associations and Institutions) Statement on Libraries and Intellectual Freedom (1999).

1993 Mataatua Declaration on Cultural and Intellectual Property Rights of Indigenous Peoples

2007 United Nations Declaration on the Rights of Indigenous Peoples

### III. International treaties

Berne Convention for the Protection of Literary and Artistic Works (last amended in 1979);

Universal Copyright Convention (1952);

International Convention for the Protection of Performers, Producers of Phonograms and Broadcasting Organizations (1961).

#### Monitoring:

- Recommendation for which monitoring the Executive Board is responsible
- Timetable of the 1st Consultation (2019):
  - Presentation of the consolidated report at the General Conference at its 40th session (Autumn 2019)

[http://portal.unesco.org/en/ev.php-URL\\_ID=49358&URL\\_DO=DO\\_TOPIC&URL\\_SECTION=201.html](http://portal.unesco.org/en/ev.php-URL_ID=49358&URL_DO=DO_TOPIC&URL_SECTION=201.html)











**FALUN 2016**

## **PRINCIPLES FOR THE CONSERVATION OF WOODEN BUILT HERITAGE (DRAFT)**

The ICOMOS International Wood Committee Contributions of the meeting in Falun Sweden 2016.

### **PREAMBLE**

These Principles were made with the objective of updating the “PRINCIPLES FOR THE PRESERVATION OF HISTORIC TIMBER STRUCTURES” adopted by ICOMOS at the 12th General Assembly in Mexico, October 1999. The updating process began in Guadalajara, Mexico (2012), Himeji, Japan (2013) and continued in Falun, Sweden (2016).

This document seeks to apply the general principles of the Venice Charter (1964), the Declaration of Amsterdam (1975), the Burra Charter (1979), the Nara Document on Authenticity (1994) and related UNESCO and ICOMOS doctrines concerning the protection and conservation of the wooden built heritage.

The purpose of this document is to define the basic principles and practices applicable in the widest variety of cases internationally for the protection and conservation of the wooden built heritage with respect to its cultural significance.

The words “wooden built heritage” refer here to all types of wooden buildings and other wooden structures that have cultural significance or are parts of historic areas, and includes temporary, movable and evolving structures.

The word “values” in this document refers to aesthetic, anthropological, archaeological, cultural, historical, scientific and technological heritage values. These Principles apply to wooden architecture and structures with historic value. Not all buildings are made entirely of wood and due regard should be paid to the interaction of wood with other materials in the construction.

## The Principles:

- recognize and respect the importance of the wooden built heritage, its structural systems and their details from all periods as part of the cultural heritage of the world;
- take into account and respect the great diversity of the wooden built heritage, and any associated intangible heritage;
- recognize that wooden heritage provides evidence of the skills of craftworkers and builders and their traditional, cultural and ancestral knowledge.
- understand the continuous evolution of cultural values over time and the need to periodically review how they are identified and how authenticity is determined in order to accommodate changing perceptions and attitudes;
- respect different local traditions, building practices and conservation methodologies, taking into account the great variety of approaches and techniques that could be used in conservation;
- take into account and respect the various historically used species and qualities of wood;
- recognize that wood constructions provide a valuable record of chronological data concerning the whole building or structure;
- take into account the excellent behaviour of wood structures in withstanding seismic forces;
- recognize the vulnerability of structures made wholly or partially of wood in varying environmental and climatic conditions, caused by (among other things) temperature and humidity fluctuations, light, fungal and insect attacks, wear and tear, fire, earthquakes or other natural disasters, and destructive actions by humans;
- recognize the increasing loss of historic wood structures due to vulnerability, misuse, loss of skills and knowledge of traditional design and construction technology, and the lack of understanding of the spiritual and historic needs of living communities;
- recognize the relevance of community participation in protection of the wooden heritage, its relation with social and environmental transformations, and its role in sustainable development.

## INSPECTION, SURVEY AND RESEARCH

1. The condition of the structure and its components, including previous strengthening works, should be carefully recorded before considering any intervention.
2. A thorough and accurate diagnosis should precede any intervention. This should be accompanied by an understanding and analysis of the construction and structural system, of its condition and the causes of any decay, damage or structural failure as well as mistakes in conception, sizing or assembly. The diagnosis must be based on documentary evidence, physical inspection and analysis and, if necessary, measurements of physical conditions using non-destructive testing (NDT), and if necessary on laboratory testing. This does not preclude carrying out minor interventions and emergency measures where these are necessary.
3. This inspection may not be sufficient to assess the condition of the structure adequately where it is concealed by other elements of the fabric. Where the significance of the covering allows, consideration may be given to its local temporary removal to facilitate the investigation.
4. “Invisible” (hidden) marks on old wooden parts must also be recorded. “Invisible” marks refers to features such as scribe marks, level and other marks used by carpenters in setting out the work (or in subsequent works or repairs) and which are not intended to be visible features of the structure.

## ANALYSIS AND EVALUATION

5. The primary aim of conservation and preservation is to maintain the authenticity of the historic fabric. This includes its configuration, materials, assembly, integrity, architectural and cultural heritage values, respecting changes through history. To do so one should preserve as far as possible all its character-defining features.

Character-defining features may comprise one or more of the following:

- a the overall structural system;
- b non-structural elements such as facades, partitions, stairs;

- c surface features;
  - d decorative treatment of the carpentry;
  - e traditions and techniques;
  - f the materials of construction, including their quality (or grade) and particular characteristics.
6. The value of these character-defining features must be determined in order to formulate any intervention plan.

## INTERVENTIONS

7. The first stage in the process of intervention should be to devise a general strategy for the conservation of the building. This needs to be discussed and agreed by all parties involved.
8. The intervention strategy must take into account the prevailing cultural values.
9. The original function of a structure should be maintained or restored except in cases when the intervention would be too extensive and prejudicial to the authenticity of the structure.
- 10 Interventions may take the form of:
- a simple repairs using either traditional carpentry techniques or compatible modern fasteners;
  - b the strengthening of the structure using traditional or compatible materials and techniques;
  - c the introduction of a supplementary structure that will relieve the present structure of load.

The choice of which intervention to use should be determined by selecting that which best preserves the structure's cultural significance.

11. Interventions should preferably:
- a be the minimum necessary to ensure the physical and structural stability and the long-term survival of the structure or site as well as its cultural significance;
  - b follow traditional practices;
  - c be reversible, if technically possible;

- d not prejudice or impede future conservation work should this become necessary;
  - e not hinder the possibility of later access to evidence exposed and incorporated in the construction;
  - f take environmental conditions into account.
12. Interventions should follow the criteria of the minimum intervention capable of ensuring the survival of the construction, saving as much as possible of its authenticity and integrity, and allowing it to continue to perform its function safely. However, that does not preclude the possible partial or even total dismantling of the structure if:
- a repairs carried out in situ and on original pieces would require an unacceptable degree of intervention;
  - b the distortion of the structure is such that it is not possible to restore its proper structural behaviour;
  - c unacceptable additional work would be required to maintain it in its deformed state.

Decisions regarding the appropriateness of any dismantling should be considered within each cultural context, and should be aimed at best preserving the authenticity of the building.

In addition, decisions should always consider and evaluate the potential for irreversible damage to the wood, as well as to wood joints and connections (such as nails) during the dismantling intervention.

13. As much as possible of the existing wooden members should be retained. Where replacement of a member or part of a member is necessary it should respect the character and significance of the structure. In cultures where the tradition exists, aged building parts from other structures might be used in the intervention.
14. Any replacement timber should preferably:
- a be of the same species as the original;
  - b match the original in moisture content;
  - c have similar characteristics of grain where it will be visible;
  - d be worked using similar craft methods and tools as the original.
15. No attempt should be made to artificially age replacement timber. The new components should not aesthetically undermine the whole.

Colouring the replaced members to match the current colour of the original may be permitted in specific cases when not doing so would unacceptably impair the aesthetic understanding and cultural significance of the structure.

16. New members or parts of members may be discreetly marked, so that they can be identified at a later date.
17. Consideration of specific values may be required to evaluate the cultural significance of some wooden heritage, such as temporary and evolving buildings.
18. In the case of interventions, the historic structure should be considered as a whole. All materials, including structural members, in-fill panels, weather-boarding, roofs, floors, doors and windows, etc, should be given equal attention. In principle, as much as possible of the existing material, as well as earlier repair works, should be retained if they do not prejudice the stability of the structure. Conservation and preservation should also include surface finishes such as plaster, paint, coating, wall-paper, etc. The original materials, techniques and textures should be respected. If it is considered strictly necessary to renew or replace deteriorated surface finishes, the use of compatible materials and techniques is desirable.
19. When considering structural members it should be noted that:
  - a if a structure has a satisfactory performance, and if the use, the actual conditions and loading regime are unchanged, the structure can be made adequately strong by simply repairing recent strength-reducing damage and failure;
  - b if recent alterations have been made, or any proposed change of use would impose a more onerous loading, the potential load-bearing strength should be estimated by structural analysis before considering the introduction of any further reinforcement.
20. On no account should interventions be carried out simply to enable the structure to meet the requirements of modern building codes. All interventions must be justified based upon sound structural principles.
21. No attempt should be made to “correct” deflections that have occurred over time, and which have no structural significance, and present no difficulties of use, simply to address present-day aesthetic preferences.

## PRESENT-DAY MATERIALS AND TECHNOLOGIES

22. Present-day materials and technologies should be chosen and used with the greatest caution and only in cases where the durability and structural behaviour of the materials and construction techniques have been satisfactorily proven over a sufficiently long period of time.
23. Utilities, such as heating, fire detection and prevention systems, should be installed with respect for the tangible and intangible significance of the structure or site. Installations should be designed so as not to cause changes to significant environmental conditions, such as temperature and humidity.
24. The use of chemical preservatives should be carefully controlled and monitored and should be used only where there is an assured benefit, where public and environmental safety will not be affected and where there is significant long-term improvement.

## RECORDING AND DOCUMENTATION

25. A record should be made of all materials used in interventions and treatments, in accordance with Article 16 of the Venice Charter and the ICOMOS Principles for the Recording of Monuments, Groups of Buildings and Sites. All relevant documentation, including characteristic samples of redundant materials or members removed from the structure, and information about relevant traditional skills and technologies, should be collected, catalogued, securely stored and made accessible as appropriate. The documentation should also include the specific reasons given for the choice of materials and methodologies in the conservation work.
26. All the above documentation must be retained both for future maintenance of the building and as an historical record.

## MONITORING AND MAINTENANCE

27. A coherent strategy of regular monitoring and day-to-day maintenance must be established in order to delay the need for larger interventions

and ensure the continuing protection of wooden built heritage and its cultural significance.

28. Monitoring should be carried out both during and after any intervention to ascertain the effectiveness of the methods used and to ensure the long-term performance of the timber and any other materials used.
29. Records of any maintenance and monitoring should be kept as part of the documented history of the structure.

## HISTORIC FOREST RESERVES

30. Because wooden structures may be in a vulnerable state, but still part of a living heritage and contributing to society, the availability of suitable timbers is essential for their repair and preservation. Therefore the crucial role that forest reserves play in the self-sustaining cycles of maintenance and repair of these wooden structures should be recognized.
31. Institutions responsible for the conservation and preservation of monuments and sites should encourage the protection of original woodland reserves and establish stores of seasoned timber appropriate for the conservation and repair of the wooden built heritage. This policy should foresee the need for large properly seasoned wooden elements in future repairs. However, such policies should not encourage the extensive substitution of authentic elements of historic structures, but rather constitute a reserve for repairs and minor replacements.

## EDUCATION AND TRAINING

32. It is essential to record, preserve and recover the traditional knowledge and skills used in constructing historic wooden architecture.
33. Educational Programmes are an essential part of raising awareness of wooden heritage by encouraging recognition and understanding of values and cultural significance. These programmes are the foundation of a sustainable conservation and development policy. A

comprehensive and sustainable strategy must involve local, regional, national and international levels and should include all relevant officials, professions, trades, the community and other interested parties.

34. Research programmes (particularly at regional level) to identify the distinctive characteristics, and social and anthropological aspects of conservation of the wooden built heritage, buildings and sites in particular areas, should be encouraged.

## GLOSSARY OF TERMS:

**Construction (noun):** the manner in which materials are ordered, assembled, and united into a whole<sup>1</sup>; the act of constructing; the thing built. (See also “Structure” below).

**Cultural significance:** the aesthetic, historical, archaeological, anthropological, scientific, technological, social, spiritual or other intangible heritage values of a structure or site for past, present or future generations.

**Evolving buildings:** those that retain an active social role in present-day society closely associated with a traditional way of life, and in which the evolutionary process is still in progress. At the same time such structures exhibit significant material evidence of their evolution over time.

**Fabric:** all the physical material of the structure or site including components, fixtures, contents and objects.

**Intangible heritage:** the traditional processes associated with the creation and use of the wooden built heritage

**Reinforcement:** actions carried out to increase the structural efficiency of an element, an ensemble of elements, or a structure. Also termed strengthening.

**Repair:** every action aimed at recovering the structural efficiency, aesthetic integrity and/or completion of them, of a part or the whole of a wooden built heritage. This involves a painstaking intervention in the historic fabric, aiming at replacing only decayed parts and otherwise leaving the structure and the materials intact.

**Strengthening:** Recovering the residual strength of a structure by making repairs and through application of additional devices.

**Structure (noun):** a stable assembly of elements designed and constructed to function as a whole in supporting and transmitting applied loads safely to the ground<sup>2</sup>.

**Temporary structures:** those which are built, used and disassembled periodically as part of a culture's or nation's ceremonies or other activities and embody traditions, craftsmanship and traditional knowledge.

---

1 Ching, Francis D K (1995) A Visual Dictionary of Architecture. New York:John Wiley & Sons

2 Ibid.

<sup>i</sup> Appendix i – Comparative Document for Conference in Falun

<sup>ii</sup> Appendix 2 – List of those present for review of Principles

<https://www.icomos.org/en/about-icomos/governance/general-information-about-the-general-assembly/future-annual-general-assemblies-2016-2017/9324-working-document>







# SALALAH GUIDELINES FOR THE MANAGEMENT OF PUBLIC ARCHAEOLOGICAL SITES (DRAFT)

To be used in conjunction with THE SALALAH RECOMMENDATION ON ARCHAEOLOGICAL PARKS AND SITES

International Committee on Archaeological Heritage Management

## PREAMBLE TO GUIDELINES

Archaeological sites are under the rightful control of stakeholders residing in the country and region in which they are located. The guidelines to follow are suggestions made to those stakeholders, should they decide to open an archaeological site to the public. *These guidelines are not intended to be regulations or standards, and the many parties that have participated in developing these guidelines hereby declare our opposition to transforming what follows into regulations or standards.* The suggestions made in these guidelines are drawn from the collective experience of those who have been engaged with management of publicly accessible archaeological sites in many countries and in different regions around the world. They are offered with the understanding that each country and region is different, and that this cultural diversity enriches the lives of all humans. Any suggestions made in these guidelines that are not consistent with the regional and local cultural stewardship of archaeological sites, and especially those open to visitors, can therefore be modified. Archaeological sites in national park systems around the world and those within World Heritage Sites present particular challenges because the tourism industry markets them as premier destinations. This has become clear in the decades since the ratification of the Convention Concerning the Protection of the of the World Cultural and Natural Heritage. Since then, similar sets of persistent problems have emerged at archaeological sites open to the public. These guidelines are intended to lessen the likelihood that such problems develop and become irremediable at archaeological sites opened to the public.

## PURPOSES AND OBJECTIVES OF THESE GUIDELINES

The purposes of these guidelines are:

- to identify the studies necessary to assess the feasibility of establishing a sustainable management framework and system for archaeological sites that are, or are likely to become, open to the public; and
- to guide the development of a sustainable management system by reference to such a feasibility assessment.

The ultimate objectives of these guidelines are summarized as follows:

- preserving and maintaining archaeological features, materials and sites in context until they can be studied in a scientific manner;
- providing a model of sound sustainable management practice (including the use) for the cultural and natural resources of archaeological sites that are open to the public;
- making use of archaeological sites open to the public to build public awareness of the value of cultural diversity and the strength of interconnections between cultures in ways that can benefit all.
- ensure that archaeological sites contribute to Sustainable Development by preserving and remediating where needed ecological services and providing opportunities and support for local populations to benefit economically in ways that do not incite social disruption.

Archaeological sites contain material evidence that when studied scientifically can inform us about the history of humanity; in that way, in the poetic language of the ICOMOS Venice Charter of 1946, they are “imbued with messages from the past.” A visit to an archaeological site conveys the human past with an immediacy that cannot be provided by other means. Therefore, the experience of visiting an archaeological site should be available to as wide an audience as possible, with the proviso that this does not compromise or destroy the physical evidence of what transpired in the past. While a standing structure can be cosmetically repaired, the historic and scientific value of an archaeological site resides completely in the ability to investigate original material in original: this sets archaeological sites apart from all other heritage sites.

A visit to an archaeological site can advance the wide spectrum of benefits— social, economic, and cultural— associated with heritage. Publicly, conscientiously presented heritage enriches our understanding of the ongoing relationship between humans and nature, as well as the common and various means by which humans organize themselves and interact with other groups. These are critical contemporary issues. Heritage plays a fundamental role in developing collective identities. Where heritage is used to privilege narratives in ways that benefit certain groups, heritage studies drawn from archaeological research and its material evidence can just as surely be used to challenge these narratives.

Publicly accessible archaeological sites can generate economic benefit in ways that are both sustainable and unsustainable. Sustainable management of archaeological sites that are open to the public requires an understanding of how public access and experience combine to help protect the sites concerned. Sustainable management also requires the clear identification of how the development of public access might harm the sites concerned. By definition, unsustainable exploitation compromises sites that are open to the public and disrupts the endeavor to present human history in a manner that is as unbiased as possible, and thus in a useful way.

These guidelines are intended to apply to all archaeological sites open to the public, but they are of particular relevance to sites engaged with the World Heritage program. The prestige that attends inscription on the World Heritage List encourages visitation and can foster important economic development locally.

Every site inscribed on the World Heritage List contains material remains of interest to the field of archaeology. World Heritage Sites include historic cities, all of which contain an archaeological remains of the earlier “city below the city.” Other World Heritage Sites, inscribed by virtue of the Outstanding Universal Value attached to natural resources can possess archaeological remains. Relatively recent structures and landscapes that are regarded as works of architectural or engineering genius are of interest to the study of archaeology and related disciplines. Archaeological materials from all these kinds of sites, if properly studied, can yield detailed and fascinating information that enriches understanding of the sites concerned. Archaeology reveals human history and human experience in the past in

ways that are pertinent to contemporary life, including evidence for the social and economic consequences of human conflict and the repercussions of overexploitation of the environment. The preservation of archaeological material, as an essential repository of information, is perhaps of particular importance at sites that are open to the public as scientific study can enliven and significantly add to the established knowledge and narratives of the sites concerned. Furthermore, all World Heritage Sites, with their Outstanding Universal Value, extraordinary qualities and global visibility, should be exemplars of sustainable management.

## THE NEED FOR THESE GUIDELINES

These guidelines explicitly address the necessity for assessing the feasibility of establishing sustainable management of archaeological sites open to the public with as much, or in some cases more, attention and investment of time and funds than has been given to assessing the suitability of designating a place a special one that deserves the special notice and regard of the public. There are many useful documents that deal with the myriad issues associated with the management of World Heritage Sites. Because they are international in scope, these are useful to the purposes of these guidelines and some are relevant to archaeological sites. The guidelines presented here are, however, specifically intended to apply to all archaeological sites that are open to the public. Among those are archaeological sites recognized explicitly as such on the World Heritage List or those that may be inscribed on the List (that is, sites on the World Heritage Tentative Lists that have been established by States Parties to the World Heritage Convention). Sites on the World Heritage List should provide models of sustainable management that can be used elsewhere. They can demonstrate how institutions and programs can be developed to protect all cultural and natural heritage sites, in accord with the objectives presented in Article V of the World Heritage Convention.

Many of the most prominent places and iconic sites on the World Heritage List, including, but not limited to, Petra, Machu Picchu, Angkor, and Pompeii were obvious choices for World Heritage inscription in terms of *suitability*. They all undeniably meet one or more of the criteria laid out in the *Operational*

*Guidelines for the Implementation of the World Heritage Convention*, and they all possess Outstanding Universal Value. Yet the impact of inscription and the *feasibility* of sustainably managing them following inscription was not adequately understood at the time of inscription. Other candidate World Heritage Sites continue to be presented for nomination with inadequate management feasibility studies to guide preparation of dossiers. Where a feasible framework for sustainable management has not been developed, the OUV including integrity and authenticity of nominated sites is vulnerable. Indeed, management itself is one of the pillars of OUV. Inattention to the feasibility of putting in place sustainable management before inviting the public to archaeological sites can only lead to depletion of the storehouse of scientific and historical information at archaeological sites and degradation of the experience of visiting these sites.

It is a daunting task to rapidly assemble a management system after the public has been invited to visit, particularly if this results in a significant increase in visitors (often the case when sites are inscribed on the World Heritage List). In the absence of regional planning and community support for zoning, it is common for development around and in the site to degrade the environment, often in ways that are destructive to the site itself. This can occur very rapidly, and damage can be irreversible. Once in place, structures and populations that occupy them have proven almost impossible to relocate. These issues are exacerbated if there is limited access to the necessary technological, regulatory, administrative, personnel, and financial resources. The results too often are very unsatisfactory for all stakeholders.

Feasibility in this context is dependent upon the ability of stakeholders to plan appropriately for protection and conservation of the site and the development of facilities and services required by the public visiting it. This presupposes the design and implementation of a sound management framework and system. Management must be founded, first and foremost, on an adequate knowledge of the site by all involved. It involves establishing capacities for monitoring together with regulating programs and activities that are adequate for sustainable management. Management planning and implementation should be linked not only for the site itself, but also for the immediate surroundings of the site and region where development is planned that is related to visitation.

These guidelines provide a roadmap for the identification and development of effective management frameworks and systems, and the necessary improvement to those already in place.

There is additional strategic value in establishing accepted guidelines for the management of archaeological sites that are open to the public. Numerous governmental and non-profit development assistance programs are available that can provide funds for State Parties and agencies seeking assistance with sustainable economic development. Adherence to approved guidelines can assist applications to these programs and provide a rationale for requests of funding and technical support. The development of a multi-year plan for the sustainable management of an archaeological site that is open to the public feasible provides a structure for effective development.

## ANTECEDENTS

This document takes note of the work undertaken by ICOMOS in the past, particularly at Ma'agan in 2002, and has full regard for the guiding principles of that meeting (Cleere 2010, 5), which identified the following elements as essential to all management planning:

- a) A thorough shared understanding of the property by all stakeholders;
- b) A cycle of planning, implementation, monitoring, evaluation and feedback;
- c) The involvement of partners and stakeholders;
- d) The allocation of necessary resources;
- e) capacity-building; and
- f) An accountable, transparent description of how the management system functions.

## THE CONCEPT OF THE ARCHAEOLOGICAL PARK

A park is defined for the purposes of these guidelines as a protected area set aside for public access, enjoyment, and education. This definition is compatible with the Salalah Recommendation, developed at the First International Conference of ICOMOS on Archaeological Parks and Sites, 23-25 February 2015, in Salalah, the Sultanate of Oman.

As described in the Salalah Recommendation, archaeological parks contain both above-ground and below-ground archaeological remains and material. The Salalah Recommendation advises that the archaeological park should be seen “as a tool for conservation of archaeological sites on the one hand, and their presentation and interpretation as a means to understand the shared past of humanity on the other hand” (<http://whc.unesco.org/en/news/1256>). As such, it can be seen to advance the overall objectives of the World Heritage Convention. It should serve as a didactic device because it can reflect the concept of shared humanity and, if sustainably managed, provide an example of how sustainable management can be accomplished in other vulnerable places where important cultural and natural resources are present.

## GUIDELINES

### 1. Management Planning

#### 1.1 Inventory and evaluation

1.1.1. *Cultural resources.* An inventory and evaluation of cultural resources is the first step in establishing the feasibility of developing a sustainable management system for archaeological sites, features, and landscapes. The evaluation should address vulnerability and threats as well as importance of cultural resources. Those with stewardship for the area in question should:

1.1.1.1. Retain credentialed, accredited and internationally recognized archaeological experts to assist in the identification and evaluation of archaeological sites, features, landscapes, and all associated material; and

1.1.1.2. Ensure that well-documented and internationally recognized best practices for field-based study, documentation, evaluation, and protection of archaeological heritage are implemented.

1.1.2. *Natural resources.* An inventory and evaluation of natural resources is as important as that which should be done for cultural resources, and should be done in ways that will identify environmental changes that might threaten archaeological resources and environmental services that benefit the local human population, or might do so in the future. Stewards of the area should:

1.1.2.1. Retain credentialed, accredited and internationally recognized experts in relevant fields. The inventory should be comprehensive for natural resources and identify those that are or may be:

1.1.2.1.1. Threatened or endangered;

1.1.2.1.2. Of central importance to the greater landscape, of which the archaeological site is a part, in particular those are related to the preservation of archaeological materials in context.

1.1.2.1.3. Integral to environmental services of value to local human populations.

1.1.3. *Infrastructure.* As-built surveys and specifications and current conditions of all infrastructure should be provided, along with known or estimated numbers of users. Infrastructure includes all buildings, utilities, roads, communication networks, and means of access and travel.

1.1.4. *Traditional use areas.* Traditional use areas should be identified. These are areas of particular value contemporary inhabitants of the site and surrounding region, including those that might be considered sacred or are used for traditional purposes (e.g., view sheds, marriages or other celebrations, or the collection of medicinal or nutritional plants).

Those who have stewardship of archaeological sites open to the public should:

1.1.4.1. Retain credentialed, accredited and recognized experts on traditional use areas to identify and evaluate archaeological heritage in such areas; and

1.1.4.2. Ensure that well-documented and internationally recognized best practices for field-based study, documentation, evaluation and protection of archaeological heritage in traditional use areas are implemented.

## 1.2. Establish site boundaries and management zones

1.2.1. *Site boundaries.* It is essential that the proposed boundary of an archaeological site that might be opened to the public be accurately determined, as informed by the inventory of cultural and natural resources.

1.2.2. *Site size and configuration.* The site should be of sufficient size and appropriate configuration to render sustainable resource protection and visitor enjoyment possible and likely (taking into account current and potential impacts from sources beyond proposed boundaries).

1.2.3. *Cost considerations.* The characteristics of the site should not preclude efficient management and administration at a reasonable cost that can be borne by the party or parties with stewardship responsibility for the site. Considerations should include:

1.2.3.1. Current and potential uses of the area within the site boundaries and surrounding lands within and beyond the buffer zone;

1.2.3.2. Land ownership and legal rights to use, including possible changes;

1.2.3.3. Public access and enjoyment potential;

1.2.3.4. Costs associated with acquisition, development, restoration, and day-to day management and operation;

1.2.3.5. Access (e.g., routes in and out of the property, way-finding, circulation, and services);

1.2.3.6. Analysis of current degradation of the archaeological resources and its causes;

1.2.3.7. Current and potential threats to the archaeological resources;

1.2.3.8. The level of local and general public support (e.g., from businesses, governments, and landowners);

1.2.3.9. The social, political, environmental, and economic impacts of designation; and

1.2.3.10. The manner and degree to which public goods, such as the quality of the natural and social environments, education, and health and safety services, should be enhanced by establishment of a public archaeological site.

1.2.4. *Buffer zones.* The boundaries of a buffer zone should also be accurate and well documented.

1.2.4.1. Because a buffer zone alone is usually not enough to ensure protection from encroachment, agreements with communities and government entities should be negotiated and formalized in order to accomplish this.

1.2.5. *Management Zones.* Within each site, Management Zones should be established, and for each the following should be identified:

1.2.5.1. Desired uses

1.2.5.2. Desired conditions

1.2.5.3. Essential visitor services

1.2.5.4. Interpretive themes (the information that should be presented in each zone).

### **1.3. Environmental Impact Assessment or Environmental Impact Study**

1.3.1. *Environmental impact.* An Environmental Impact Assessment or Environmental Impact Study should be performed for any proposed development activity that might affect the quality of the environment.

1.3.2. *Economic consequences of environmental impact.* An Environmental Impact Assessment or Environmental Impact Study should include an economic analysis of the potential economic benefits and liabilities that might accrue to private individuals, business interests, community groups, or local, regional, national, or global publics.

### **1.5. Monitoring plan**

1.5.1. *The monitoring plan.* The monitoring plan should specify the technologies, protocols, instruments, indicators, and standards that should monitor:

1.5.1.1. The condition of cultural resources of all types;

1.5.1.2. The condition of natural resources of all types;

1.5.1.3. Visitor numbers, circulation, and satisfaction;

1.5.1.4. Community satisfaction; and

1.5.1.5. The condition of facilities and infrastructure.

1.5.2. *Monitoring priorities.* Monitoring priorities should be set by considering which resources and experiences are:

1.5.2.1. Key to the natural or cultural integrity of the site and to the opportunities for enjoyment of the site;

1.5.2.2. Essential in order to maintain compliance with the criteria used to identify the site's Outstanding Universal Value; and

1.5.2.3. Identified in the site's general management plan or other relevant planning documents as significant.

### **1.6. Archaeological Research Plan**

1.6.1. *The archaeological research plan.* A plan, including research priorities, should be developed to address needs for mitigation of archaeological resource disturbance from natural processes (e.g., flooding) as well as human activities (e.g., looting or development). The plan should also identify archaeological research that is relevant to the importance of the site, and especially research that might address issues of urgent concern to the field of archaeology, contemporary environmental policy, and improving international relations.

### **1.7. Interpretive Plan**

1.7.1. *The interpretive plan.* An interpretive plan should be prepared that identifies the interpretive themes and sub-themes that best serve the didactic function of the site. The plan should be updated at least every five years.

### **1.8. Management Facilities**

1.8.1. *Management facilities.* Management facilities include the structures, utilities, and equipment necessary for the sustainable management of the archaeological site. Those necessary to ensure the retention of the site's integrity, authenticity, and characteristics relating to its importance should be identified; further, the requirements for these facilities should be identified.

### **1.9 Staffing Plan**

1.9.1 Sustainable management will require the services of a variety of well-trained people. These will typically include scientists and archaeologists with pertinent experience in the natural and cultural resources of the public archaeological site, maintenance staff, administrative staff having skills in budgeting and scheduling,

interpreters to present the site to visitors, people with museum, curation and presentation skills, community liaisons, people trained in providing health and safety services, enforcement personnel, and managers who can coordinate develop and coordinate all necessary policies, programs, and activities. Staffing needs will vary; therefore, a staffing plan should be developed that is informed by the inventory and evaluation of cultural and natural resources and the identified vulnerability and threats to those resources, as well as the specific objectives associated with presenting the site to the public. The plan should include an organization chart, necessary qualifications for all required positions, and duties and responsibilities for all positions.

### **1.10. Community Engagement Plan**

*1.10.1. The community engagement plan.* The community engagement plan should address how stakeholders should be identified, categorized, and engaged.

### **1.11. General Management Plan**

*1.11.1. The General Management Plan.* Respecting the essential elements of effective management as presented above and below, a General Management Plan should be prepared. The plan should set out the framework, structure, system, policies, and actions that should be taken to ensure sustainable management. For each action, benchmarks, schedules, indicators, and budgets should be established. The General Management Plan should include all the material described in Sections 1.1 through 1.9. More specifically, it should also include:

1.11.1.1. A financial plan, which should describe how entry fees and other fees should be allocated to the management of the site and a rationale for this;

1.11.1.2. A cyclical maintenance plan, which should describe appropriate programs, staffing needs, equipment and supplies needs, and facility design.

1.11.1.3. A safety plan, which should include protocols for disaster response, search and rescue, and requirements for medical facilities; and

1.10.1.2. The inclusion of the staffing plan outlined above (1.9.), which presents required staff and identifies necessary qualifications, roles, and responsibilities for each staff member. The staffing plan should include an organization chart.

## **2. Management Implementation**

### **2.1. Monitoring**

*2.1.1. Monitoring system feedback.* The results of the monitoring system and program should be used as decision support tools by site management. Decisions supported by monitoring should involve all aspects of management, including, but not limited to, cyclical maintenance and capital improvements; personnel acquisition and management; determination of carrying capacity (which should vary over time according to management capacity) and limits of acceptable change; and policy, programs, and activities needed for effective community involvement.

### **2.2. Transparency**

*2.2.1. Transparency in monitoring and management.* Stakeholders, from local community groups to international organizations with an interest in the site, should be kept informed of any management programs and activities related to their interest in the site. Monitoring results should be made available to all stakeholders on a regular basis.

### **2.3. Networking**

*2.3.1. Communication and coordination among site managers.* It is recommended that representatives of public archaeological sites meet on a regular basis to share issues of common concern and the approaches, programs, and activities that have helped resolve issues of common concern.

Revised 26 May 2016

<https://www.icomos.org/en/about-icomos/governance/general-information-about-the-general-assembly/future-annual-general-assemblies-2016-2017/9324-working-documents>











**NEW DELHI 2017**

## **ICOMOS-IFLA PRINCIPLES CONCERNING RURAL LANDSCAPES AS HERITAGE**

Adopted by the 19th ICOMOS General Assembly, New Delhi, India, 15 December 2017

### **PREAMBLE**

Rural landscapes are a vital component of the heritage of humanity. They are also one of the most common types of continuing cultural landscapes. There is a great diversity of rural landscapes around the world that represent cultures and cultural traditions. They provide multiple economic and social benefits, multi-functionality, cultural support and ecosystem services for human societies. This document encourages deep reflection and offers guidance on the ethics, culture, environmental, and sustainable transformation of rural landscape systems, at all scales, and from international to local administrative levels.

**Acknowledging** the global importance of culturally-based food production and use of renewable natural resources, and the issues and threats challenging such activities within contemporary cultural, environmental, economic, social, and legal contexts;

**Considering** The United Nations *Universal Declaration of Human Rights* (1948), the United Nations *Convention on Biological Diversity* (1992), the UNESCO *Universal Declaration on Cultural Diversity* (2001), the United Nations *Declaration on the Rights of Indigenous People* (2007), the *International Treaty on Plant Genetic Resources for Food and Agriculture* (Food and Agriculture Organisation, 2011), and the United Nations 2015 *Sustainable Development Goals* (in particular but not limited to Sub-Goal 11.4<sup>1</sup>), which state that all human beings have the right to adequate, healthy, and secure sources of food and water;

---

<sup>1</sup> “Strengthen the efforts for the protection and safeguarding of the world’s natural and cultural heritage” (United Nations Agenda 2030).

**Considering** international documents such as the *Venice Charter for the Conservation and Restoration of Monuments and Sites* (1964), the *UNESCO Convention Concerning the Protection of the World Cultural and Natural Heritage* (1972); the *ICOMOS-IFLA Florence Charter on Historic Gardens* (1981), the *ICOMOS Washington Charter for the Conservation of Historic Towns and Urban Areas* (1987), the *ICOMOS Nara Document on Authenticity* (1994), the *UNESCO Convention for the Safeguarding of the Intangible Heritage* (2003), the *ICOMOS Xi'an Declaration on the Conservation of the Setting of Heritage Structures, Sites and Areas* (2005), the *UNESCO Recommendation on the Historic Urban Landscape* (2011), the *ICOMOS Florence Declaration on Heritage and Landscape as Human Values* (2014), the *UNESCO Florence Declaration on the Links Between Biological and Cultural Diversity* (2014), and the *UNESCO Policy to integrate a sustainable development perspective within the processes of the World Heritage Convention* (2015) which relate to the heritage and cultural values of landscapes;

**Considering** regional and national documents related to rural landscapes, including the *European Landscape Convention* (2000), the *European Rural Heritage Observation Guide* (CEMAT, 2003), the Council of Europe's *Faro Convention on the Value of Cultural Heritage for Society* (2005), the *Tokyo Declaration on the Role of Sacred Natural Sites and Cultural Landscapes in the Conservation of Biological and Cultural Diversity* (2005), the *Santiago de Cuba Declaration on Cultural Landscape in the Caribbean* (2005), the *Latin American Landscape Initiative (LALI)* (2012), the *Australia ICOMOS Charter for Places of Cultural Significance (The Burra Charter)* (1999–2013), the *IFLA Asia Pacific Region Landscape Charter* (2015);

**Considering** the *UNESCO World Heritage Centre Operational Guidelines for the Implementation of the World Heritage Convention* (2015), which, from 1992, primarily designate rural landscapes as 'Continuing Cultural Landscapes';

**Considering** the *ICOMOS-IFLA ISCCL Milano Declaration on Rural Landscapes* (2014) concerning rural landscapes as heritage;

**Considering** the International Union for the Conservation of Nature (IUCN) recognition of Category V Protected Landscapes and Seascapes

in their management system, the IUCN efforts of sustaining pastoral nomadism (*World Initiative on Sustainable Pastoralism*, 2008), the joint ICOMOS- IUCN initiative "*Connecting Practice – nature and culture*" and the importance of people interacting with their environment in ways that sustain bio-cultural diversity (including agrobiodiversity, as well as cultural and spiritual values);

**Considering** the *FAO Globally Important Agricultural Heritage Systems (GIAHS)* programme that aims to identify and safeguard remarkable land-use systems and landscapes with heritage value and rich in globally significant agricultural biological diversity and knowledge systems;

**Considering** other documents solely related to aspects of rural landscapes, such as the *Charter of Baeza on Agrarian Heritage* (2012), the *Recommendations of the World Heritage Thematic Expert Meeting on Vineyard Cultural Landscapes, Tokaj, Hungary* (2001) and recommendations of many other thematic expert meetings on rural cultural landscapes as heritage;

## **ICOMOS and IFLA**

**Commit** to expand their cooperative actions by adopting the dissemination and use of the following principles in order to promote the understanding, effective protection, sustainable transformation, and transmission and appreciation of rural landscape heritage as part of human societies and cultures and a crucial resource across the world.

The principles presented in this document seek to address loss and adverse changes to rural landscapes and their associated communities through the recognition, safeguarding, and promotion of their heritage values. Its goal is to promote an appropriate balance between economic, social, cultural, and environmental aspects.

# **1 PRINCIPLES**

## **A Definitions**

**Rural Landscape:** For the purpose of this document, rural landscapes are terrestrial and aquatic areas co-produced by human- nature interaction

used for the production of food and other renewable natural resources, via agriculture, animal husbandry and pastoralism, fishing and aquaculture, forestry, wild food gathering, hunting, and extraction of other resources, such as salt. Rural landscapes are multifunctional resources. At the same time, all rural areas have cultural meanings attributed to them by people and communities: all rural areas are landscapes.

Rural landscapes are dynamic, living systems encompassing places produced and managed through traditional methods, techniques, accumulated knowledge, and cultural practices, as well as those places where traditional approaches to production have been changed. Rural landscape systems encompass rural elements and functional, productive, spatial, visual, symbolic, environmental relationships among them and with a wider context.

Rural landscapes encompass both well-managed and degraded or abandoned areas that can be reused or reclaimed. They can be huge rural spaces, peri-urban areas as well as small spaces within built-up areas. Rural landscapes encompass land surfaces, subsurface soils and resources, the airspace above, and water bodies.

**Rural landscape as heritage:** Refers to the tangible and intangible heritage of rural areas. Rural landscape as heritage encompasses physical attributes – the productive land itself, morphology, water, infrastructure, vegetation, settlements, rural buildings and centers, vernacular architecture, transport, and trade networks, etc. – as well as wider physical, cultural, and environmental linkages and settings. Rural landscape as heritage also includes associated cultural knowledge, traditions, practices, expressions of local human communities' identity and belonging, and the cultural values and meanings attributed to those landscapes by past and contemporary people and communities. Rural landscapes as heritage encompass technical, scientific, and practical knowledge, related to human-nature relationships.

Rural landscapes as heritage are expressions of social structures and functional organizations, realizing, using and transforming them, in the past and in the present. Rural landscape as heritage encompasses cultural, spiritual, and natural attributes that contribute to the continuation of biocultural diversity.

All rural areas can be read as heritage, both outstanding and ordinary, traditional and recently transformed by modernization activities: heritage can be present in different types and degrees and related to many historic periods, as a palimpsest.

## B Importance

Rural landscapes have been shaped over millennia and represent significant parts of the earth's human and environmental history, ways of living, and heritage. Many areas of the world are vital sources of food, renewable natural resources, associated world view and wellbeing for local and indigenous communities, as well as for visitors and tourists. Landscapes used for the production and/or harvesting of plant and animal species, including edible resources, demonstrate the entangled connections between humans and other species across broad areas. The diversity of agricultural, forest, animal husbandry, fishery and aquaculture, wild-resource, and other resource practices is essential for the future adaptation and resilience of global human life.

The heritage values of rural landscapes are recognised in some heritage inventories, such as the UNESCO World Heritage List as '*continuing cultural landscapes*'. The values may be recognised in regional, national, and local heritage inventories and protected area regimes. Identification of rural landscapes values at any level aims to provide awareness of rural landscapes' tangible and intangible characters and values, and is the first and necessary step to promote the sustainable conservation of such areas and transmission of their associated knowledge and cultural meanings to future generations.

## C Threats

Increasing human populations and climate change make rural landscapes vulnerable to risks of loss and/or abandonment or radical change. The threats to rural landscapes reflect three inter-related types of change:

1. Demographic and cultural (population growth in urban areas and depopulation in rural areas, urban expansion, intensive infrastructure works, development pressures, loss of traditional practices, techniques, local knowledge, and cultures);

2. Structural (globalization, change and growth of trade and relations, economic growth or decline, intensification of agricultural practices and techniques, change of land and loss of native pastures and of domesticated species diversity);
3. Environmental (climate change, pollution and environmental degradation including non-sustainable resource mining, impacts on soil, vegetation, and air quality, and loss of biodiversity and agro-biodiversity).

## D Challenges

Heritage should play a significant role in the recognition, protection and promotion of rural landscapes and biocultural diversity due to the significant values it represents. Heritage can contribute to sustaining and increasing the adaptation and resilience of rural landscapes by supporting rural and urban inhabitants, local communities, governments, industries, and corporations as integral aspect to managing the dynamic nature, threats, risks, strengths, and potentialities of such areas. Conservation of the integrity and authenticity of the heritage should focus on assuring the standard and quality of living of local populations working and living in rural landscapes. As all heritage, rural heritage is an economic resource: its use should be appropriate and should provide vital support to its long-term sustainability.

## E Benefits

Rural landscapes are critical resources for the future of human society and the world environment: they provide food and raw materials as well as a sense of identity; they represent economic, spatial, environmental, social, cultural, spiritual, health, scientific, technical and, in some areas, recreational factors. In addition to food and raw materials, rural landscapes contribute to land conservation (nature, environment, soil, hydrographic networks) and the transmission of rural cultures (techniques, knowledge of environment, cultural traditions, etc.) to future generations. Rural landscapes often provide distinct economic and tourism benefits when closely associated with the communication and enhancement of their heritage values.

Over the past decades, environmental and cultural heritage have been the subject of increasing international, interdisciplinary, and transdisciplinary research. Communities as knowledge-holders or local initiatives and

collaboration among stakeholders, rural and urban inhabitants, and professionals have contributed to conservation, awareness, and enhancement of rural landscapes as a valuable shared resource. Many international, national, and local public administrations have supported this idea through their legislation and policies.

## F Sustainability of rural landscapes

Many rural systems have proven to be sustainable and resilient over time. Various aspects of these systems can inform future management of rural activities and support conservation and improvement of biocultural diversity and peoples' rights to adequate quantities and good quality of food and raw materials.

As landscapes undergo continuous, irreversible, and inevitable processes of transformation, rural landscape policies should focus on managing acceptable and appropriate changes over time, dealing with conserving, respecting, and enhancing heritage values.

## 2 ACTION CRITERIA

Specific measures are: understand, protect, sustainably manage the transformation, communicate and transmit landscapes and their heritage values.

### A Understand rural landscapes and their heritage values

1. Recognise that all rural landscapes have heritage values, whether assessed to be of outstanding or ordinary values, and that such heritage values will vary with scale and character (shapes, materials, uses and functions, time periods, changes).
2. Document the heritage values of rural landscapes as a basis of effective planning, decision-making, and management. Inventories, catalogues, atlases and maps provide basic knowledge of rural landscapes to spatial planning, environmental and heritage protection and management tools, landscape design and monitoring.
3. Develop base-line knowledge of the physical and cultural characteristics of rural landscapes: the status of the rural landscape

today; its historical transformations and expressions of tangible and intangible heritage; historic, inherited, and contemporary socio-cultural perceptions of the landscape; past and present links (spatial, cultural, social, productive, and functional) between all elements (natural and human-made, material and immaterial) of rural landscape systems; and the stakeholders involved in both their past and present. Inventorying and cataloguing aim to describe rural landscapes in the current state but also to identify changes over time.

4. Inventory and catalogue rural landscapes at all scales (world, regional, national, local). These tools should integrate local, traditional and scientific knowledge and use systematic methods that are readily achievable and suitable for use by both specialists and non-specialists in all countries in order to collect and compare rural landscapes internationally and locally. In order to achieve an effective database, inventorying and cataloguing activities should consider complexity, costs of human resources, timing of data collection and organisation, and involve both experts and local inhabitants.
5. Develop knowledge to enable comparison of rural landscapes at all levels (world, regional, national, local), monitoring historical changes to rural landscapes and support shared learning and collaboration from local to global scales and among all public and private stakeholders.
6. Recognize local populations as knowledge-holders who in many cases help to shape and maintain the landscape and should be involved to the building of collective knowledge.
7. Promote extensive and ongoing cooperation among public institutions, non-governmental organizations, and universities for research, information sharing, technical assistance, and coordination of a wide variety of knowledge building activities at all administrative levels.

## **B Protect rural landscapes and their heritage values**

1. **Review and implement legal and policy frameworks** to ensure biocultural sustainability and resilience in use and transformation of rural landscapes with respect to global, national, local threats, risks and opportunities.

2. **Implement policies** via laws, rules, economic strategies, governance solutions, information sharing, and cultural support. The complex character of rural landscapes necessitates development of both specific and cross-sectoral policies that consider broad cultural, social, economic, and environmental factors.
3. **Define strategies and actions of dynamic conservation, repair, innovation, adaptive transformation, maintenance, and long term management.** These should seek to balance global and local approaches, and ensure the involvement and cooperation of all stakeholders and communities in their effective design and daily management.
4. **Consider that rural landscape heritage values are economic, social, environmental, cultural, spiritual and spatial** and that awareness of the values of each rural landscape enables the management of appropriate and effective future transformations.
5. **Prepare effective policies** based on informed local and other knowledge of the landscapes, their strengths and weaknesses, as well as potential threats and opportunities. Define objectives and tools. Programme actions with regard to long, medium, and short-term management goals.
6. **Define monitoring strategies** to review the effectivity of implemented policies and reassess short, medium and long term goals, related to the monitoring results.
7. **Consider that effective policy implementation** is dependent on an informed and engaged public, on their support for required strategies and involvement on actions. It is essential to complement all other actions. Public administrations should support pro-active and bottom-up initiatives.

## **C Sustainably manage rural landscapes and their heritage values**

1. **Consider bio-cultural rights within food and natural resource production.** Implement planned management approaches that acknowledge the dynamic, living nature of landscapes and respect human and non-human species living within them. Respect, value, and support the diversities of cultures and various peoples' approaches to nature.



2. **Recognize key stakeholders of rural landscapes, including rural inhabitants**, and the local, indigenous, and migrant communities with connections and attachments to places, their role in shaping and maintaining the landscape, as well as their knowledge of natural and environmental conditions, past and present events, local cultures and traditions, and scientific and technical solutions trialed and implemented over the centuries. Acknowledge that the good standard and quality of living for rural inhabitants enables strengthening of rural activities, rural landscapes, and transmission and continuity of rural practices and cultures.
3. **Consider the connections between cultural, natural, economic, and social aspects** across large and small landscapes, in the development of sustainable management strategies for rural landscapes as heritage resource.
4. **Consider the interconnections between rural and urban landscapes.** Rural landscapes are a resource for urban inhabitants' quality of life (recreation, food quality and quantity, firewood, water and clean air quality, food gardening, etc.) in all metropolitan areas of the world. Urban areas can provide economic opportunities for rural landscape products and integrated other activities as recreation, education, agritourism, demanded by citizens (multifunctionality). Cooperation between rural, peri-urban, and urban inhabitants should be actively encouraged and practiced, both in sharing knowledge of rural landscapes' heritage and the responsibilities for their management.
5. **Find a balance** between long-term sustainable (economic, social, cultural, environmental) resource use and heritage conservation, and the short-term needs of rural workers' quality of living, which is a prerequisite for the continuation of activities that generate and sustain rural landscapes. Quality of living consists of both income and social appreciation, provision of public services including education, recognition of culture rights, etc. This requires finding appropriate ways and solutions in which living heritage values can be recognized so that change and adaptation are to be compatible with the conservation, use, and communication of heritage values, as well as with the economic enhancement of rural landscape heritage.
6. **Support the equitable governance of rural landscapes**, including and encouraging the active engagement of local populations,

stakeholders, and rural and urban inhabitants, in both the knowledge of, and responsibilities for, the management and monitoring of rural landscape as heritage. Because many rural landscapes are a mosaic of private, corporate, and government ownership, collaborative working relationships are necessary.

## D Communicate and transmit the heritage and values of rural landscapes

1. Communicate awareness of the heritage values of rural landscapes through collaborative participatory actions, such as shared learning, education, capacity building, heritage interpretation and research activities. Develop participatory plans and practices that involve civil society, private organizations, public authorities, and amongst both urban and rural inhabitants.
2. Increase awareness of the means and methods for transmission of traditional and technical knowledge and practices and develop case studies to do so and disseminate best practices.
3. Support shared learning, training, and research using diverse tools, approaches and cultural practices, including cultural mapping, information-sharing, education, and on-site training involving stakeholders, such as local communities, heritage specialists, professionals of various disciplines, schools and universities, and the media.

**NOTE:** The document is promoted by *ICOMOS-IFLA International Scientific Committee on Cultural Landscapes (World Rural Landscapes Initiative [www.worldrurallandscapes.org](http://www.worldrurallandscapes.org))*

<https://www.icomos.org/en/about-icomos/governance/general-information-about-the-general-assembly/future-annual-general-assemblies-2016-2017/9324-working-documents>







**NEW DELHI 2017**

## **ICOMOS-IFLA DOCUMENT ON HISTORIC URBAN PUBLIC PARKS**

Adopted by the 19th ICOMOS General Assembly, New Delhi, India, 15 December 2017

### **PPREAMBLE**

Historic urban public parks are an essential and inalienable part of the traditions and plans of many towns and settlements. It is the main purpose of this document to emphasize that they be preserved as historic sites for the use and enjoyment of present and future generations.

Historic urban public parks were created or made accessible for the well-being of all persons. They have for too long been regarded as 'reserve grounds', i.e. commodities to be 'filled' or used for events and activities of specific groups for which they were not designed. Many have undergone changes detrimental to their historic qualities, design, vegetation, character, and uses. The importance of integrating public parks in town planning schemes was acknowledged in the 19<sup>th</sup> and the early 20<sup>th</sup> centuries, so many of them date from that era, but some urban parks may be older or younger.

Definitions for concepts such as promenade, boulevard, avenue, tree-lined street, canal, etc. can be added as footnotes to the document by authorities and park management in their respective countries as necessary.

## HISTORIC URBAN PUBLIC PARKS - DEFINITIONS

1. The concept 'public park' rests on the principle of openness and accessibility for all people to visit and enjoy. The concept is not limited or defined by size.
2. Public parks are typically in public ownership and represent 'common wealth'. They may be owned by one or more public bodies or public foundations that are responsible for their oversight, knowledgeable care, and stewardship.
3. The concept of 'park' is sometimes used synonymously with words such as garden, square, or similar expressions. (Conversely, the word 'park' can denote 'grounds' in some languages.) Fundamental to the identity of historic urban parks is their composition and dependency on such elements as vegetation, architectural elements, water features, paths, or topography. These elements contribute to their character, seasonal interest, shade, and spatial and visual identity.  
*Nota bene.* There are parks and squares to which the general public do not have any rights of access, however, they do contribute to the ecology, amenity, and historic form of cities; these can be considered historic urban parks, though not public spaces.
4. Historic promenades, boulevards, avenues, and tree-lined streets are not public parks, but constitute a special category of public space. It is important that adequate care be taken to preserve their particular characteristics.
5. In many cases, historic urban public parks may be located along, or linked by, boulevards or tree-lined streets (see the previous passage). They form green arteries that can connect public parks with other public spaces. They and their component parts must be preserved, regardless of the fact that some parts may have been created at different times.

## HISTORIC URBAN PUBLIC PARKS – VALUES

6. Historic urban public parks often accrue a range of values, including social and intangible values to local or wider communities; aesthetic

values for their design or character; horticultural and ecological values; and civic value as places where public protests or major gatherings, such as celebrations, etc., have occurred. Due to their value to communities, these values, meanings, and functions should be explained, celebrated, and safeguarded. They often form the core of why public parks continue to matter to people.

## SPECIAL CHARACTER-DEFINING ELEMENTS OF HISTORIC URBAN PUBLIC PARKS

### *Spaces, Views, Planting, and Vistas*

7. An historic urban public park may include one or more defined spaces. The sizes, relationships, and proportions of these spaces, whether wide or small, narrow, open, or closed, and their component parts, must be understood, their original purposes and meanings recognized, and appropriately protected or conserved.
8. There may also be views, focal points, and viewpoints within historic urban public parks that are integral to their design and contribute to their identity and appreciation.
9. Historic urban public parks are places with defined perimeters, yet their visual dimensions often extend beyond their limits. The distant panoramas, sight-lines, vistas and views provided by them are typically part of their integral, heritage-character-defining elements. The vistas and views may even be the reason why the parks came into being in the first place, and why they have been visited and appreciated by generations. Views of historic urban public parks are often important parts of historic streets and the wider identity of the city or town.
10. Historic vistas, views, and viewpoints are to be preserved; the planting of new vegetation, as well as siting or re-siting of elements outside parks, such as built forms, art works, water features, or commemorations, must not interfere with them. Infrastructure, such as bus shelters, directional signs, utility posts and boxes, and other urban installations, such as billboards, that would obstruct or detract

from heritage-character-defining vistas or historic character, must not be erected within key views. Interpretive signs should be located where they are visible to visitors, but not intrude on important views or the other experiential qualities of the park. Parks and their immediate surroundings - that serve as their buffer zones - must be kept free from vending machines, transformers, and other such structures that would detract from their ambiance.

11. The vegetation of historic urban public parks must be freely seen by people from the surrounding areas. Thus the views towards parks must not be blocked or diminished by elements such as billboards, large traffic signs, parking structures, or other infrastructure. Also parks have vegetation that is important to their character, for example giving them a strong sense of enclosure. An historic urban public park constitutes a physical, as well as visual, respite within the surrounding built environment and it is important for passers-by to see and to enjoy the movement, colours, sounds, and shade of the vegetation. Active programmes of renewal and replanting play an important part in its stewardship.
12. In some circumstances, historic urban public parks were conceived in relation to adjacent urban spaces, streets, canals, or buildings. In others, their introduction influenced the quality of the neighbourhoods, spaces, and built form that developed around them. They are thus often intrinsic components of historic town planning schemes.

Under these circumstances, the preservation of parks and their settings, in matters of quality, design, and scale, is equally important. Changes in the height or massing of adjacent buildings can adversely impact spatial relationships, views and vistas, microclimate (sun/shade/wind), and the authentic character of the primary historic design; such changes must be avoided. Increasing height of adjoining buildings can increase shade or wind downdraft, actively and negatively impacting on the health and condition of parks and their vegetation, as well as the experience of their users.

13. Similarly edge condition elements, such as street width, paving materials, street tree planting, lighting, and other heritage-character-defining elements must also be carefully considered and conserved.

Care is required in selecting new elements and materials to be used adjacent to historic urban public parks to ensure that these complement their character.

### ***Topography***

14. Historic landforms, topography, and grades, such as mounds and swales, as well as historic features, such as terraces and rockeries, are often an integral part of the lay-out and character-defining elements of an historic urban public park. Even minor changes in these can be detrimental to the overall design, rhythm, and the relationships of spaces, views and vistas with each other, and should be avoided. Large underground structures should not be built within historic urban public parks. Major disruption for infrastructure upgrades (drainage, electricity, or other service pipelines) should be avoided or minimized where possible. Options to locate these outside historic urban public parks should be investigated and followed wherever possible.

### ***Light***

15. Natural light, sunshine, and shade are some of the reasons people find relaxation and solace in parks and gardens. For many urban dwellers, historic public parks offer the only opportunity to enjoy these natural qualities in densely built city centres.

If night lighting is to be added to enable enjoyable and safe public use after dark, lamp posts and fixtures must be selected and located so that they enhance the character, spatial relationships, views, vistas, sight-lines, and other historic-character-defining elements of parks, rather than detract from them. Thus compatibly-designed posts and fixtures should be used, rather than standard street light posts and fixtures. In some areas, night lighting of parks should not spill into the night sky.

### ***Environment***

16. Historic urban parks are important for urban biodiversity and can support a range of habitats and species and provide urban populations with direct access to nature. The flora and fauna of the park should be understood and protected. Where possible, and where compatible with the character of the park, the environment and habitat should be improved to enhance interconnected ecological corridors.

Many historic urban parks contain water features and planting originating in other parts of the world. The use of water and energy to maintain these features needs to be managed in a sustainable manner.

## HISTORIC STUDY, PRESERVATION, AND MANAGEMENT

### *General Remarks*

17. The stewardship of historic urban public parks and their component parts must be based on careful research, original documents, such as photographs, and evaluation of their condition in relation to an inventory of the existing park conditions and future uses. These studies must be done by qualified or appropriately experienced experts. It is equally important to research the evolution of the planning and development of historic parks and their settings, as well as their importance for local communities. It is also important to establish and actively maintain archives of related historic documents that can be used as the basis for their on-going maintenance, management, and stewardship.

All such work must be documented, and the records must be deposited and protected in accessible public archives to assist reference and understanding, and ensure the benefit to future generations. Such records can and should inform future conservation and management decisions and actions.

18. The overuse of historic urban public parks can adversely impact both the enjoyment of them and the retention of their historic character, quality, and component parts. Overuse can also stress their vegetation. Therefore, appropriate management procedures must be established to control the number of visitors based on the carrying capacity of each park and the historic buildings in them; these should be calculated and monitored regularly. Options such as restricting access and limiting hours of entry (or numbers per hour, etc.) should be investigated, tested and monitored. In order to alleviate the overuse of historic parks, municipalities should create

and maintain well-designed new parks for their inhabitants, and park programming should be based on a determined carrying capacity, so that use can be supported without undue damage to them. Regular checks on carrying capacity and monitoring of damage or other impacts should inform such planning and management decisions.

19. Original and later compatible elements and furnishings, such as fences, gates, lamp posts, railings, paving materials, rubbish bins, seating, art works, and vegetation should be protected and repaired or replaced-in-kind when damaged or at the end of their life-cycles. Re-assessment of the significance of non-original, later, and compatible elements should be undertaken at regular intervals and inform planning and management decisions.
20. The general principles for the conservation of historic urban public parks are the same as those for other historic parks and gardens, as cited in the ICOMOS-IFLA Florence Charter on Historic Gardens (1981), Article 10.

## UNIVERSALLY ACCESSIBLE DESIGN ADAPTATIONS

21. Because historic urban public parks are publicly-owned cultural resources that should be accessible to all, some of their components or areas may require modification in order to ensure that they are universally accessible without adversely impacting their heritage values. The recommended approach should integrate, rather than segregate, those who are physically challenged. Thus, design professionals should use an integrated approach to design solutions for all users, rather than creating separate facilities for those who are physically challenged. Any new accessible design interventions should fit sensitively and unobtrusively into historic urban public parks without compromising their values, character-defining elements, and experiential qualities. Options to do so with minimal change - i.e. the minimal introduction of new materials or signage, should be actively investigated before any changes or interventions are made.

## UNIVERSAL APPLICATION

The above principles and recommendations apply to all historic urban public parks anywhere in the world. However, in some countries, exemptions may be granted from statutory requirements, if such changes or interventions would adversely impact the historic integrity of the park.

<https://www.icomos.org/en/about-icomos/governance/general-information-about-the-general-assembly/future-annual-general-assemblies-2016-2017/9324-working-documents>





**WARSAW 2018**





**WARSAW 2018**

## **WARSAW RECOMMENDATION ON RECOVERY AND RECONSTRUCTION OF CULTURAL HERITAGE**

**Warsaw, 8 May 2018**

1. We, the 200 participants from more than 30 countries, representing different regions of the world, including Institutions from Poland, the Global Alliance for Urban Crises, ICOMOS, ICCROM, the World Bank, UNISDR and UNESCO, gathered at the Royal Castle of Warsaw, on the occasion of the International Conference on Reconstruction “The Challenges of World Heritage Recovery” (6-8 May 2018), wish to express our gratitude and acknowledge the generous hospitality and intellectual leadership of the Polish authorities and of the City of Warsaw for providing a forum to reflect on the principles that should govern the recovery and reconstruction of World Heritage properties following armed conflict or disasters caused by natural hazards, as requested by the World Heritage Committee in its Decision 41 COM 7, adopted in Krakow in July 2017.
2. Recognizing the City of Warsaw, which provided the venue for the Conference, as being the most relevant and inspiring context to our deliberations, considering the tragedy of deliberate destruction it has suffered during World War II and the subsequent exemplary reconstruction of its historic centre, evidence of the strength of the spirit and determination of the Polish people to recover their cultural identity, as recognized through the inscription of the “Historic Centre of Warsaw” on the World Heritage List in 1980 and the inclusion of the “Archive of Warsaw Reconstruction Office” (BOS Archive) on the UNESCO Memory of the World Register in 2011.
3. Being deeply concerned by the growing impact of armed conflicts and disasters on important cultural and natural heritage places, including World Heritage properties, which in recent years have resulted in their widespread destruction to a scale similar to that of World War II, notably within historic urban areas and archaeological sites.
4. Condemning in the strongest terms, the numerous intentional attacks on cultural properties and in general the perpetration of all policies of ‘cultural cleansing’ aimed at erasing diversity, inciting sectarian violence and preventing the affected population from realizing their human rights, including cultural rights.

5. Being cognizant of the relevant international legal instruments and established doctrine in the field of cultural heritage and, within the context of the *World Heritage Convention*, of the need to ensure that any reconstruction be undertaken only in exceptional circumstances, while protecting the Outstanding Universal Value of the concerned properties and meeting the test of authenticity and conditions of integrity.
6. Recognizing, at the same time, the legitimate aspiration of concerned communities to overcome the trauma of conflicts, war and disasters by reconstructing as soon as possible their cities and villages – and particularly their affected cultural heritage – as a means to reaffirm their identity, restore their dignity and lay the conditions for a sustainable social and economic recovery.
7. Considering, moreover, that the recovery of the cultural heritage lost or damaged as a result of armed conflict offers unique opportunities, notably within the context of stabilization processes, to foster mutual recognition, promote dialogue and lay the ground for reconciliation among all components of society, particularly in areas characterized by a strong cultural diversity and/or hosting important numbers of refugees and/or internally displaced people, which will lead to new approaches to recovery and reconstruction in the future.
8. Appreciating as well, through recent experiences of heritage recovery in countries affected by armed conflict and disasters, the review of numerous past case studies and the outcomes of several meetings and workshops on the topic held in many parts of the world, how closely connected cultural heritage is with humanitarian, security and peacebuilding concerns and why it should not be considered in isolation from other broader social, economic and environmental issues in the context of post-conflict or post-disaster recovery and reconstruction policies and plans.
9. Mindful of Art. 5 of the *World Heritage Convention*, calling on States Parties “to adopt a general policy, which aims to give cultural and natural heritage a function in the life of the community”, and of the 2015 *Policy on the Integration of a Sustainable Development Perspective in the Processes of the World Heritage Convention*, are convinced that each generation has the right to contribute to human legacy and to the

wellbeing of present and future generations, including through adaptation to natural and historic processes of change and transformation.

10. Conscious also of the new possibilities offered by evolving technologies, in particular for very high-definition 3D digital recording and reproduction of material attributes of cultural heritage properties, and of the ethical challenges that this poses in relation to their possible reconstruction.
11. Considering that further guidance is required to assist States Parties, site managers, practitioners and communities through the multi-faceted challenges that reconstruction brings, with due consideration given to its social and economic context, the short- and long-term needs of properties, and the notion of Outstanding Universal Value (OUV). To this end, and based on the discussions at the Conference, **we propose the following non-exhaustive set of principles:**

## Terminology

In post conflict and post disaster situations, the overall goal is the recovery of the society. This aims at the consolidation of peace and security and at restoring or improving the economic, physical, social, cultural and environmental assets, systems and activities of an affected community or society, aligning with the principles of sustainable development and “build back better”. An essential part of this process is the recovery of the places’ heritage, which may include reconstruction. The term “reconstruction”, in the World Heritage context, is understood as a technical process for the restitution of destroyed or severely damaged physical assets and infrastructure following an armed conflict or a disaster. It is important to stress, in this regard, that such reconstruction of physical assets must give due consideration to their associated intangible practices, beliefs and traditional knowledge which are essential for sustaining cultural values among local communities.

## Values

Prior to taking any decision on a proposal for recovery and reconstruction of a heritage place, it is essential to understand the values, which justified its inscription on the World Heritage List and the related attributes.

It is equally essential, at the same time, to understand – and integrate in the reconstruction process - the values identified in the heritage property by the local communities, including new values resulting from the traumatic events associated with the destruction, together with the corresponding physical attributes and related intangible cultural practices and traditional knowledge. Assessment of authenticity should take account of the recognized values of the property in accordance with the 1994 Nara Document on Authenticity, emphasizing both material and other aspects.

## Conservation doctrine

Decisions on recovery and reconstruction should take into consideration conservation doctrine that aims to protect the Outstanding Universal Value of properties. Since the 1990s, there has been a doctrinal shift towards intangible dimensions as a result of the introduction of the concept of cultural landscapes and the 1994 Nara Document on Authenticity. The emergence of these intangible associations needs to be consolidated within existing conservation doctrine.

## Communities

Decisions on recovery and reconstruction should follow people-centred approaches and fully engage local communities and, where appropriate, indigenous peoples, as well as other relevant stakeholders. Recovery and reconstruction should enable people to connect to their heritage, identity and history. In reconstructing heritage, consideration should be given to social justice and property titles and a rights-based approach should be applied, which would ensure full participation in cultural life, freedom of expression and access to cultural heritage for all individuals and groups, including refugees and internally displaced people, where relevant. In this regard, it is important to identify cultural rights and their holders in every reconstruction programme, and to ensure their prior and informed consent to key decisions, in accordance with the relevant provisions of the Operational Guidelines for the Implementation of the World Heritage Convention and the 2015 Policy on the Integration of a Sustainable Development Perspective in the Processes of the World Heritage Convention.

## Allowing time for reflection

While recognizing people's need to return at the earliest opportunity, sufficient time should be allowed for reflection before decisions are made within a gradual and additive approach, taking into consideration the evolving nature of values post-trauma, the challenges of ensuring a fully inclusive and participatory process of consultation and the complex interrelations between heritage and other societal needs in the context of post-conflict and post-disaster recovery and reconstruction.

## Resilience, Capacities and sustainability

Building resilience is essential to address destruction and disasters. In reconstructing heritage following an armed conflict or a disaster, it is critical to reduce existing structural and social vulnerabilities, including by building back better, and to improve quality of life, while retaining cultural values as much as possible. It is also essential to invest in long term capacity building in disaster risk management and conservation techniques, notably for craftspeople, in order to provide for a sustainable future of the heritage places.

## Memory and Reconciliation

Memorialization of the destruction should be considered for communities and stakeholders; this could be done through site interpretation or presentation, keeping selected remains of destruction for remembrance, education and tourist information, as appropriate. In the context of post-conflict recovery and reconstruction, such places should integrate as much as possible a shared narrative of the traumatic events that led to the destruction, reflecting the views of all components of the society, so as to foster mutual recognition and social cohesion, and establish conditions for reconciliation.

## Documentation

Proper documentation and inventories, including documentation of building methods, is key for a successful reconstruction of cultural heritage

and for ensuring that it protects the Outstanding Universal Value and meets the test of authenticity and conditions of integrity. Documentation and its regular updating, making the most of the possibilities offered by new technologies, are essential features of all site management so that in the event of disaster, the records are available as a basis for response post-trauma. It is important also to document activities during and after reconstruction. This process should not limit itself to the physical aspects of buildings, sites and collections, but capture as well the social and economic relations between these and the associated communities. In cases where no technical documentation is available, traditional knowledge and communal memories associated with the site, as appropriate, could also be used to guide reconstruction. It is important also to document the decision-making process during reconstruction, for future record.

## Governance

The key to a successful reconstruction of cultural heritage is the establishment of a strong governance that allows for a fully participatory process, is based on a comprehensive analysis of the context and on a clear operational strategy, including mechanisms for the coordination of national and international actors, and is supported by an effective public communication policy. In this process, it is essential that concern for cultural heritage is integrated in policies and plans of other sectors involved in the recovery and reconstruction effort, including housing, infrastructure, economic development, education and communication, amongst others, through the appropriate inter-institutional coordination mechanisms.

## Planning

It is critical to develop heritage recovery and reconstruction projects within the larger urban planning context, giving consideration both to physical attributes and to the web of relations and uses with which they are associated. There are a variety of planning tools available for the development of special plans and projects for the recovery and reconstruction of heritage.

Particularly useful, in the urban context, is the Historic Urban Landscape (HUL) approach. Authorities should use such tools to develop guidance for local owners on matters such as materials, typologies and colours, in order to set out an overall approach to recovery and reconstruction of cultural heritage, while allowing for flexibility in the process. Planning strategies for heritage reconstruction should give also consideration to investing as a priority in the rehabilitation of public open spaces, as anchors around which communities can be engaged in decisions about the future of their cities. It is also important that any planning framework should pay full attention to issues of ownership and legislation.

## Education and awareness raising

One important way to prevent the destruction of cultural heritage and support its recovery post-conflict and disaster is to promote the knowledge and appreciation of – and respect for – the diversity of cultures and heritage, notably through educational programmes at all levels and awareness raising initiatives.

### **We address the following recommendations:**

#### ***To the World Heritage Committee***

Develop guidance for reconstruction and recovery at World Heritage sites, including Resource Manuals, further development of case studies and best practice examples, taking into account the principles listed above.

#### ***To the States Parties to the World Heritage Convention***

Use the Historic Urban Landscape (HUL) and integrated management approaches to achieve a holistic approach to reconstruction for post disaster recovery.

#### ***To the Advisory Bodies***

Consider the clarification of conservation doctrine as it applies to reconstruction by reviewing the substantial body of charters, declarations and recommendation, the further development of case studies as well as providing specific advice to States Parties, as necessary.

***To UNESCO, the World Bank, and other UN  
and International bodies***

Reaffirm that cultural and natural heritage, including World Heritage, is an essential and integral part of recovery and the growth of sustainable communities towards achieving the 2030 agenda for sustainable development, and ensure accordingly the necessary international coordination mechanisms.









## BEST PRACTICES ON WORLD HERITAGE: INTEGRAL ACTIONS (DRAFT)

III International Conference on Best Practices in World Heritage

### I. INTRODUCTION

The current document is the synthesis of a four-day debate on the management of cultural World Heritage from the Integral Actions' perspective. It took place among more than 120 professionals from 40 states, in addition to those who followed our social media (almost 2500 people). It collects the proposals that came to light during the III International Conference on Best Practices in World Heritage, held in Menorca between the 2th and the 5th of May 2018, and it also reflects the concerns that worry us the most.

It is the third meeting of these dimensions and characteristics, confirming, on the one hand, the fact that these conferences are a referent as scientific projects of collective knowledge generation and, on the other, the Consell de Menorca's commitment to the debate on best practices in cultural heritage. In this sense, this document has two precedents: the one published in the Proceedings of the *I International Conferene on Best Practices in World Heritage: Archeology* celebrated in the same island of Menorca in 2012 and the one published in 2015: Proceedings of the *II International Conference on Best Practices in World Heritage: People and Communities*, both held in the same place. Therefore, and in order not to repeat too much, it is recommended to consult previous documents to assess some practices or information that do not appear here and also respond to the needs that are basic for a comprehensive management.

The document responds to the efforts of this community, and it has been produced from a planned participatory process, developed throughout the event and through social media: in room with discussions, presentation of papers, lectures and written proposals (the stickers); also in the workshops focused on specific topics and in the mediation of the large group that took place the last afternoon of the conference which was based on a summary of the contributions made in the preceding days. Subsequently, a draft of the document was sent to participants



and committees, and the text was made public on social media to encourage those who want to make their last contributions.

Based on all this, the following text is proposed, it is structured in two parts: the key issues for the integral actions in World Heritage and the best practices that will help us to improve them. The main goal is to be used as a working tool, capable of showing new or alternative ways to solve the challenges that World Heritage management must face in the 21st century.

## II. TOPICS

### 1. World Heritage in the 21st Century

Our previous documents already made reference to this topic and we refer to them to emphasize the importance of rethinking the World Heritage Convention, of understanding that the Exceptional Universal Value changes over time, as our societies do, and to remember the fact that in the 21st Century it is impossible to talk about World Heritage if it is not integrated with the social strategies and complexities in which we live and if it is not responding to the search for a better quality of life for everyone.

Along these lines, and in accordance with the United Nations, as corresponds to the inscribed cultural properties on the tangible and intangible World Heritage List, we would like to recall here the Objectives of Sustainable Development and the 2030 Agenda. It seems to us that there are at least four of those objectives in which World Heritage would have a lot to say: number 1 (to end poverty in all its forms and everywhere), number 4 (to ensure inclusion and quality education for everyone), number 5 (to get gender equality) and number 11 (sustainable cities and communities).

World Heritage properties are particularly visible and they generate a whole set of protection regulations. This means that, at least at the beginning, it is necessary to think about what actions are going to be taken on those cultural properties and also to consider more voices when making decisions. This could create opportunities that would let to take

into account other social interests and needs rather than being justified just on purely economic grounds.

### 2. The value of a comprehensive management

Nominated World Heritage properties are or should be perceived as a collective property of all humankind. For this reason their management becomes even more complex when acquiring an international dimension, in addition to the national, regional and local dimensions that they already have. In this sense, there are many stakeholders dedicated to heritage management, research and socialization: Interest groups, public administrators, heritage professionals, researchers, local communities, etc.

The full and transparent involvement of the interested parties should start from the establishment of coordination, consensus and cooperation mechanisms, allowing to manage each heritage property in its broader physical and social context. Collaborative activities and a cooperative approach could balance the asymmetry of powers (political, economic, etc.) in decision making and also provide flexibility to institutional frameworks, by finding connection instruments between governments, population and institutions dedicated to education and research. At the same time, in the international scene, it is necessary to establish communication channels between civil society, local communities and the stakeholders involved in the UNESCO World Heritage Committee and their advisory bodies, in order to promote local monitoring as a way of involvement and responsibilities' sharing.

Being aware that a proper cultural property management requires a multidimensional and comprehensive treatment, we defend that the management of a World Heritage property, even with greater articulation, cannot ignore the coherence between the scientific and the technical, the political-administrative and the social-collective dimensions. Therefore, comprehensive actions are understood as those aimed at balancing three dimensions of World Heritage, which ensure the nominated cultural property's sustainability, favoring its enjoyment and appropriation or re-appropriation by the community (local and non-local), together with the values which are considered the reason of its conservation, preservation or safeguard.

### 3. Dealing with World Heritage from an ecological vision

We understand that the traditional dissociation between cultural and natural heritage, between human beings and their environment does not reflect the scenario of human evolution or its history. In this sense, we cannot contemplate these two dimensions in unconnected areas, since the natural is also a conceptual construction made by human beings, therefore, it only makes sense for our species. Overcome the static vision of heritage, as a metaphor for living beings: we defend that it evolves or mutates. And Heritage does so as a result of the interaction over time and the natural environment or eco-system of their immediate surroundings. In this sense, the approach to Cultural Heritage is resized, encouraging an integrating vision that regards the relationship between human beings and nature, and it reflects a holistic approach to the identity signs of society. That is to say, we can speak of an integral heritage, as an expression of a valued territory for its cultural and natural qualities, and for the activities that humans developed in it.

Likewise we consider that it is necessary to apply the ecosystemic trend of thoughts to the World Heritage management, and that they are basic to the aimed sustainability.

### 4. Sustainability: towards a common economy based on co-learning

The importance of non-formal and informal learning was already highlighted at the 2015 Conference, but the need to foster a sense of community through it and to share intergenerational learning becomes increasingly evident. This is part of the design of a good interpretation strategy and of efficient communication channels, so that heritage education acquires the scope and transcendence that it should have.

It is always said that heritage education is, frequently, the only way that ensures the cultural property durability in the future. Cultural heritage training should not be only a specialization, but it is still, today, the pending issue in the formal education civic process and it should be part of the basic training programs, especially in the childhood and youth, to

ensure their future. The development of empathy for the signs of identity that represent a culture or a society, and the generational continuity of the collective memory, should not only be transmitted from parents to children but also included in a transversal way in the educational programs at schools, colleges, etc. in an analogous manner to the awareness of the importance of caring and preserving environment.

Although some places and states put a lot of effort into heritage education, in general it presents an objectified approach or it treats the properties as isolated elements, which are common and basic to life in society, such as those related to economy. While we ignore the economic side of our common heritage, because we consider it part of the capitalist speculation, or we understand that there is not a look of social justice on it, we can not advance in the reappropriation of our common past and its benefits for all humankind. Reconnecting economic values from a social and committed vision is a pending subject of World Heritage management and it can not be addressed without knowing the market system in which we live.

### 5. Beyond communities participation: co-responsibility in decision-making

We refer to the 2015 document of best practices to develop this point. Once again it is evident that we have not yet overcome the theoretical threshold of community participation.

Unfortunately, the protection measures for cultural and natural World Heritage have not been as respected as we would like since it was decided to recognize them as such. Eventhough the political bodies encouraged to promote much of these statements, it seems that they have partially forgotten the commitments made with UNESCO and what a recognition of this nature means.

In general terms we have verified that the management systems fail to pretend to involve people living in the surroundings of World Heritage, whether this population is heir to those who made it or invented it, or came later. Although „good intentions” can be found to incorporate local communities’ voices in decision-making, these mechanisms are not

effective and they often do not achieve their participation and effective involvement. This is often due to the fact that they are only considered under the fait accompli policy and the reversal in measures, forms and statements. It appears unacceptable on the part of the management and political staff, when it could be the best solution for a peaceful coexistence and common, profitable interest in relation to these cultural goods declared by UNESCO.

Similar problems are found with those who visit the sites and with their attitudes. Frictions between both groups, visitors and locals (We remind their lack of internal homogeneity and we are aware that we generalize and simplify and that the exception exists) are accentuated with mass tourism. Although they share too often the same ignorance about what being World Heritage means and what is supposed to mean.

### **III. BEST PRACTICES**

#### **6. The „new“ World Heritage: Declaring cultural heritage considering the results of participatory processes, where civil society has the final say on whether it really wants that nomination**

Since our first Conference in 2012, we keep defending the role of communities and people in decision-making, not only after being nominated, but also as a prior requirement to any proposal attempt by the states.

The cultural properties inscribed on the World Heritage Indicative List should also go through these processes before continuing. The processes should be assumed as usual and continued over time, such as the physical conservation control or the renewal of outreach strategies and its interpretation.

On average, the preparation of a site's nomination takes two years until its inscription in the indicative list. Participatory processes must start there and be decisive in the results to start processing the document. From the beginning, the World Heritage transcultural nature should be emphasized.

If we assume that the starting point is from the professional or technical sphere, a deep conceptual and historical analysis of the cultural property should be first done. This is in order to develop a preliminary advantages and disadvantages study and to clarify the pursued goals when a cultural property wants to be included on the World Heritage List.

Likewise, a thorough comparative analysis should be made between the already nominated properties. This analysis should be based on qualitative and quantitative indicators and it should also be a tool developed by UNESCO.

Likewise, all social agents (public administration, academia, organized and not organized civil society, etc.) must be involved from the beginning in the decision-making process, in order to balance the power asymmetries (political, economic, etc.), in such a way that the document or proposal could be constructed jointly.

#### **7. Training and Intergenerational construction of World Heritage and its management**

To foster knowledge generation through collaborative training processes. Heritage interpretation should represent, in addition to adults, young people and children to promote an identity sense with the cultural property. This interpretation should start from the intergenerational reality and encourage stories about group solidarity.

Therefore, a holistic education should be articulated with a transdisciplinary perspective, based on human rights and shared, multidirectional and multilateral learning.

From the formal point of view, a co-learning model should be promoted. It should improve existing knowledge curriculum systems towards an inclusive form, which integrates local and traditional knowledge.

UNESCO has to play an important role in all this, since it has the people with the necessary technical knowledge to transmit the contents that local World Heritage communities must generate. UNESCO should support these more technical people to develop the most appropriate way to transmit this knowledge. Young people with a great technical background, but in such a situation that they have had to move because there is no work opportunities in their birth places, have much to say.

These people could return to their places of origin to act as coordinators of the interdisciplinary teams that are generated to produce the contents. They have knowledge and emotional attachment to act as mediators between different agents. It is not that there are no older people or professionals with extensive experience working, it is about incorporating the youth in decision-making in a more horizontal way. This could balance the technical and adults' life experience, with the strong theoretical and instrumental training of the new generations. Their uncertainties and freshness, as well as the contribution of World Heritage management innovative ideas in this search for horizontality in decision-making, move us away from usual disregards between what is World Heritage for most people and what is for the public or for expert groups.

Activities that allow this intergenerational training would be: children and elderly will attract adults to the activities. Visibility of different generations to interpretation. Theatricalization. Transmission of experiences at on-site workshops.

To put the emphasis on telling stories, especially from a personal point of view. These stories should focus on the intergenerational links when we talk about interpretation. That is, to promote children and adults representation in the stories that we tell about the World Heritage sites, and to encourage stories about group solidarity. For example, people of a certain age who were able to survive thanks to community help.

That is, knowledge being generated through collaborative processes in which participant people teach each other.

We understand that these processes should be started immediately but we will only see the results once at least a generation has passed so that this knowledge can be repeated and the chain, continued.

## **8. Managing World Heritage jointly, holistically and equitably**

In order to properly manage a heritage property, we need to have shared visions of it. Therefore, it is essential to reduce the politicization of Heritage, to socialize it and to achieve a balance between nature and culture, as well as a legislation and an adapted territorial order that takes

into account the risks, and especially the relationship, with water and the subsoil. We live mainly on land, but we interact with water in seas, lakes and rivers, and our foundations are under our feet. World Heritage should not forget the greatest inheritance of the human species and of living beings in general: their planet. Unfortunately, common resources are the most important on earth but the worst managed.

It is suggested to work from the following management practices:

1. To identify and to study models that work well. To take advantage of what serves us from other places and to adapt them to ours, to innovate, but lean on common experience.
2. To involve local communities from the beginning, creating coordination trust spaces for all types of agents.
3. To identify practical conservation and maintenance results and to require intersectoral coordination with agreements, workshops and follow-up meetings.

## **9. Encouraging financial self-management to reduce external dependencies**

It seems to us that it is unrealistic in a global economy to continue developing planning and management of sites without considering the activities that generate their own income and allow some independence.

Sustainable financing should be underway before registration. This should be a separate budget line for each site. We should be aware of the necessity of adapting it. There are no equal rules for all places. It does seem evident that there should be a control between cost and available budget.

Therefore, a place that is financially self-sustaining, should meet these minimums:

1. To establish a sufficient budget to cover the cost of the site safeguarding, based on detailed needs ranging from physical conservation or the safeguarding of intangible values to the dissemination or interpretation or to reception of visits and habitability: to assess needs to be able to develop sustainably.



2. To look for the economic resources in the closest local scale (to reduce dependence) and preferably through activities that generate income.

Therefore, feasibility and impact studies prior to registration, as well as the establishment of the following practices, should be required to eliminate absolute dependencies and achieve financial self-maintenance:

- To have an economic planning and a coordinating committee to execute it
- To control donations + duties / credits / trusts
- To supervise / to control responsibilities / competences at the micro (local) and macro (national / international) levels in the economic sphere. There must be a built mechanism for accountability and periodic evaluations to adjust accordingly
- Conservation of resources and long-term use
- To organize planning meetings and services generation in coordination with all local interested parties that allow defining strategies and criteria of economic and social value.
- In relation to these coordinating meetings, in order to avoid overlaps, joint strategies must be generated, ranging from raising local co-financing, developing local businesses, NGOs and local associations, indigenous communities, generation of cooperatives. To link commercial and social strategies in a sustainable manner.
- To establish bridges and clear agreements with supra-local organizations when investing or establishing socioeconomic strategies: international intermediaries, NGOs, UNESCO, etc.
- Development or infrastructures construction control from the point of view of their viability and adaptation to the socio-environmental perspective.
- To achieve financial difference by bringing in external donors
- To generate a plan for the total number of visitors, the infrastructure services and a risk assessment plan.

Flexibility is fundamental and permanent change is a part of every action, in constant evolution and contextualized to the World Heritage site.

## 10. Integration of agents involved in the management of World Heritage.

The agents' involvement is basic to everything described in previous practices. Integrating parties don't always agree, but they also do not want to give up anything if it means that someone will gain by their resignation. Finding consensus is the main objective of this practice.

These agents integration can be made at all scales and for all types of projects or activities. They will serve to correct problems or follow up them. Agents can be departments of the Public Administration and their scales: local, provincial, regional, autonomic, state, to international organizations, social movements, universities, scientific entities, companies, etc.

To facilitate this type of practice we need specific professional training based on social and human sciences.

Doing so requires generating a sense of co-responsibility and ownership, as well as fostering a sense of community and collaboration among the involved agents.

It is necessary to identify that each one is a part of the whole and if one of the involved parties changes, the whole collapses or varies significantly and there is a loss of confidence and commitment.

One of the most important practices will be to learn to listen and to leave stable spaces for debate and definition of positions, in order to win trust.

To capture and to have a vision on each interested stakeholder together and separately.

To create a commission or a committee in which all interested parties are.

To develop the action from top to bottom. This can be done by planning the participation or by planing the state /government role but as a participant. How the group should make the consensual decisions has to be defined.

To prepare solutions, the management plan or whatever is estimated, based on the consensus of the interested parties.

## **11. Create spaces for debate and decision as participatory as possible, face-to-face and virtual**

We are aware about the obsession with participation and with encouraging their processes. World Heritage, like all social constructions, develops and possesses new and different challenges for the future; more democratic solutions are needed to act on them.

We insist on the reference contained in the documents of previous Best Practices, on the importance of giving continuity to this social model change in the forms and the decision making on the common properties such as those of the World Heritage.

To close, we want to highlight at least the following practices:

To empower people and communities for the shared and participatory management of World Heritage with models that facilitate self-management when possible.

To find a balance between technological tools and significant experiences in situ. In order to do this, spaces must be provided for debate in an inclusive manner through the creation of virtual and face-to-face social networks, such as those we defend in these conferences.







## Project "SURE - Sustainable Urban Rehabilitation in Europe" implemented in frames of Erasmus+ Programme Key Action 2: Strategic Partnership Projects Agreement n° 2016-1-PL01-KA203-026232



This work is licensed under a [Creative Commons Attribution-NonCommercial-ShareAlike 4.0 International License](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc-sa/4.0/).